

PCT

WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION  
International Bureau



641

INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

|   |  |  |  |
|---|--|--|--|
| (51) International Patent Classification <sup>6</sup> :<br><b>A61K 31/56, C07J 5/00, 7/00</b>   |  | A1   | (11) International Publication Number: <b>WO 98/50041</b><br><br>(43) International Publication Date: <b>12 November 1998 (12.11.98)</b> |
| (21) International Application Number: <b>PCT/US98/07712</b><br><br>(22) International Filing Date: <b>15 April 1998 (15.04.98)</b>   |  | (81) Designated States: AU, BR, CA, JP, European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE).<br><br>Published<br><i>With international search report.</i> |  |
| (30) Priority Data:<br>08/851,780 6 May 1997 (06.05.97) US<br>08/887,215 2 July 1997 (02.07.97) US  |  |  |  |
| (71) Applicant: IMARX PHARMACEUTICAL CORP. [US/US];<br>1635 East 18th Street, Tucson, AZ 85749 (US).  |  |  |  |
| (72) Inventor: UNGER, Evan, C.; 13365 East Camino La Cebadilla,<br>Tucson, AZ 85749 (US).   |  |  |  |
| (74) Agents: MILLER, Suzanne, E. et al.; Woodcock, Washburn,<br>Kurtz, Mackiewicz & Norris, 46th floor, One Liberty Place,<br>Philadelphia, PA 19103 (US).  |  |  |  |
| (54) Title: NOVEL PRODRUGS COMPRISING FLUORINATED AMPHIPHILES   |  |  |  |
| (57) Abstract<br><p>The present invention describes, <i>inter alia</i>, novel prodrugs comprising fluorinated amphiphiles, compositions comprising the novel prodrugs, and methods of use of the prodrugs and compositions.</p> |  |  |  |

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

|    |                          |    |                                       |    |   |    |                          |
|----|--------------------------|----|---------------------------------------|----|---|----|--------------------------|
| AL | Albania                  | ES | Spain                                 | LS | Lesotho                                   | SI | Slovenia                 |
| AM | Armenia                  | FI | Finland                               | LT | Lithuania                                 | SK | Slovakia                 |
| AT | Austria                  | FR | France                                | LU | Luxembourg                                | SN | Senegal                  |
| AU | Australia                | GA | Gabon                                 | LV | Latvia                                    | SZ | Swaziland                |
| AZ | Azerbaijan               | GB | United Kingdom                        | MC | Monaco                                    | TD | Chad                     |
| BA | Bosnia and Herzegovina   | GE | Georgia                               | MD | Republic of Moldova                       | TG | Togo                     |
| BB | Barbados                 | GH | Ghana                                 | MG | Madagascar                                | TJ | Tajikistan               |
| BE | Belgium                  | GN | Guinea                                | MK | The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia | TM | Turkmenistan             |
| BF | Burkina Faso             | GR | Greece                                | ML | Mali                                      | TR | Turkey                   |
| BG | Bulgaria                 | HU | Hungary                               | MN | Mongolia                                  | TT | Trinidad and Tobago      |
| BJ | Benin                    | IE | Ireland                               | MR | Mauritania                                | UA | Ukraine                  |
| BR | Brazil                   | IL | Israel                                | MW | Malawi                                    | UG | Uganda                   |
| BY | Belarus                  | IS | Iceland                               | MX | Mexico                                    | US | United States of America |
| CA | Canada                   | IT | Italy                                 | NE | Niger                                     | UZ | Uzbekistan               |
| CF | Central African Republic | JP | Japan                                 | NL | Netherlands                               | VN | Viet Nam                 |
| CG | Congo                    | KE | Kenya                                 | NO | Norway                                    | YU | Yugoslavia               |
| CH | Switzerland              | KG | Kyrgyzstan                            | NZ | New Zealand                               | ZW | Zimbabwe                 |
| CI | Côte d'Ivoire            | KP | Democratic People's Republic of Korea | PL | Poland                                    |    |                          |
| CM | Cameroon                 | KR | Republic of Korea                     | PT | Portugal                                  |    |                          |
| CN | China                    | KZ | Kazakhstan                            | RO | Romania                                   |    |                          |
| CU | Cuba                     | LC | Saint Lucia                           | RU | Russian Federation                        |    |                          |
| CZ | Czech Republic           | LI | Liechtenstein                         | SD | Sudan                                     |    |                          |
| DE | Germany                  | LK | Sri Lanka                             | SE | Sweden                                    |    |                          |
| DK | Denmark                  | LR | Liberia                               | SG | Singapore                                 |    |                          |
| EE | Estonia                  |    |                                       |    |   |    |                          |

- 1 -

## NOVEL PRODRUGS COMPRISING FLUORINATED AMPHIPHILES

### Related Applications

This is a continuation-in-part of U.S. Application No. 08/851,780, filed May 6, 1997, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference herein in its entirety.

### Field of the Invention

The present invention describes, *inter alia*, novel prodrugs comprising fluorinated amphiphiles, compositions comprising the novel prodrugs, and methods of using the novel prodrugs and compositions.

10

### Background of the Invention

Prodrugs comprise inactive forms of active drugs where a chemical group is present on the prodrug which renders it inactive and/or confers solubility or some other property to the drug. Prodrugs are generally inactive, but once the chemical group has been cleaved from the prodrug, by heat, cavitation, pressure, and/or enzymes in the surrounding environment, the active drug is generated. Prodrugs may be designed as reversible drug derivatives and utilized as modifiers to enhance drug transport to site-specific tissues. Prodrugs are described in the art, for example, in Sinkula et al., *J.*

- 2 -

*Pharm. Sci.*, 64:181-210 (1975), the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

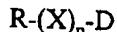
It is often difficult to deliver appropriate concentrations of therapeutic compounds to target tissues. For example, in ophthalmic therapy, eye drops may be  
5 used to deliver steroid hormones to the eye. However, the duration of action is short, and less than 3% of the steroid hormone typically penetrates the cornea. As a partial solution to this problem, intraocular injections have been used to increase the dosage.

The design of prodrugs to date has been to increase the effective water solubility of the therapeutic compound for targeting to regions where water is the  
10 principal solvent. For example, Fedorak, et al., *Am. J. Physiol.*, 269:G210-218 (1995), describe dexamethasone- $\beta$ -D-glucuronide; McLoed, et al., *Gastroenterol.*, 106:405-413 (1994), describe dexamethasone-succinate-dextran; and Hochhaus, et al, *Biomed. Chrom.*, 6:283-286 (1992), describe dexamethasone-21-sulphobenzoate sodium and dexamethasone-21-isonicotinate.

15 A new way of delivering higher concentrations of bioactive agents to target tissues is needed in the art to improve the efficacy of the bioactive agents. The present invention is directed to these, as well as other, important ends.

#### Summary of the Invention

The present invention describes novel prodrugs comprising fluorinated  
20 amphiphiles. In one embodiment, the invention describes compounds comprising a bioactive agent covalently bonded to a fluorinated amphiphilic moiety via a linking group. Preferably, the compound is of the formula (I):



(I)

25 where R is a fluorinated amphiphilic moiety; X is a linking group; p is an integer of 0 or 1; and D is a bioactive agent. The linking group X may, for example, comprise an amide group, an ester group, an ether group, an anhydride group, a disulfide group, an SO<sub>2</sub>NH group, an amino group, a thio group or an alkyl group. The bioactive agent D may be any suitable bioactive agent, including those described herein. The fluorinated  
30 amphiphilic moiety R may be any of a wide variety of fluorinated amphiphilic moieties

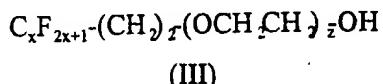
- 3 -

including, for example, the moieties of the formula (II), formula (III), formula (IV) formula (V) and/or formula (VI):



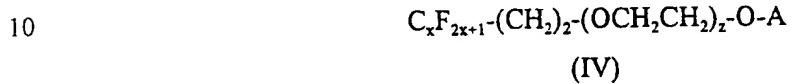
(II)

5 where n is an integer of from about 7 to about 13; m is an integer of from 1 to about 4;



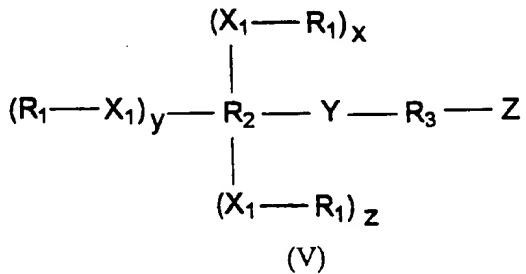
(III)

where x is an integer of from about 6 to about 12; and z is an integer of from about 8 to about 20;



(IV)

where x is an integer of about 6 to about 12; z is an integer of about 8 to about 20; and A is a monosaccharide or a disaccharide;

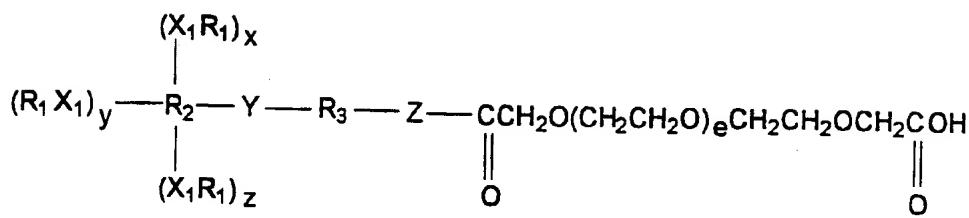


(V)

where each of x, y and z is independently 0 or 1; each  $\text{X}_1$  is independently -O-, -S-, -SO-, -SO<sub>2</sub>-, -NR<sub>4</sub>-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-O-, -O-C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-NR<sub>4</sub>- or -NR<sub>4</sub>-C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-; X<sub>2</sub> is O or S; Y is a direct bond or -X<sub>3</sub>-M(=O)(OR<sub>5</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-, where q is 1 or 2; X<sub>3</sub> is a direct bond or -O-; M is P or S; Z is a hydrogen atom, the residue of a hydrophilic polymer, a saccharide residue or -N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>r</sub>, where r is 2 or 3; each R<sub>1</sub> is independently an alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms or a fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms; R<sub>2</sub> is a direct bond or an alkylene linking group of 1 to about 10 carbon atoms; R<sub>3</sub> is a direct bond or an alkylene group of 1 to about 10 carbon atoms; each of R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> is independently a hydrogen atom or an alkyl group of 1 to about 8 carbon atoms; and each R<sub>6</sub> is independently a hydrogen atom, an alkyl group of 1 to about 8 carbon atoms or a residue of a hydrophilic polymer; provided that at least one of x, y and z is 1, at

- 4 -

least one of  $R_1$  is a fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms; provided that when  $R_2$  is a direct bond, two of  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  are each 0; and/or



5

(VI)

where  $R_1$ ,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $X_1$ ,  $Y$ ,  $Z$ ,  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  are as defined above in formula (V); and  $e$  is an integer of from 1 to about 30..

Another embodiment of the invention is directed to compositions comprising, in an aqueous carrier, a compound of the formula (I). The composition may also comprise a wide variety of additional components, including, for example, one or more of gases, gaseous precursors, liquids, oils, stabilizing materials, targeting ligands and/or other bioactive agents.

Another embodiment of the invention describes methods of delivering a bioactive agent to a patient and/or treating a condition in a patient comprising administering to the patient a composition comprising a compound of the formula (I). If desired, the method may further comprise the step of imaging the patient with diagnostic imaging, such as ultrasound, to monitor the location of the composition in the patient. Also, if desired, the method may comprise the step of applying therapeutic ultrasound to the patient to facilitate delivery of the bioactive agent in a desired region of the patient. The composition may also comprise one or more of a wide variety of components, including, for example, gases, gaseous precursors, liquids, oils, stabilizing materials, targeting ligands and other bioactive agents.

These and other aspects of the invention will become more apparent from the following detailed description.

- 5 -

**Detailed Description of the Invention**

As employed above and throughout the disclosure, the following terms, unless otherwise indicated, shall be understood to have the following meanings.

"Amphiphilic moiety" or "amphiphile" refers to a synthetic, semi-synthetic (modified natural) or naturally-occurring compound having a water-soluble, hydrophilic portion and a water-insoluble, hydrophobic portion. Preferred amphiphilic compounds are characterized by a polar head group, for example, a phosphatidylcholine group, and one or more nonpolar, aliphatic chains, for example, palmitoyl groups. "Fluorinated amphiphilic moiety" refers to an amphiphilic compound in which at least one hydrogen atom of the amphiphilic compound is replaced with a fluorine atom. In a preferred form, the fluorinated amphiphilic compounds are polyfluorinated. "Polyfluorinated amphiphilic moiety" refers to amphiphilic compounds which contain two or more fluorine atoms. "Perfluorinated amphiphilic moiety" refers to amphiphilic compounds in which all the hydrogen atoms have been replaced with a fluorine atom.

"Amphipathy" refers to the simultaneous attraction and repulsion in a single molecule or ion containing one or more groups having an affinity for the phase or medium in which they are dissolved, emulsified and/or suspended, together with one or more groups that tend to be expelled from the involved phase or medium.

"Lipid" refers to a naturally-occurring, synthetic or semi-synthetic (modified natural) compound which is generally amphipathic. Lipids typically comprise a hydrophilic component and a hydrophobic component. Exemplary lipids include, for example, fatty acids, neutral fats, phosphatides, fluorinated lipids, oils, fluorinated oils, glycolipids, surface active agents (surfactants and fluorosurfactants), aliphatic alcohols, waxes, terpenes and steroids. The phrase semi-synthetic (modified natural) denotes a natural compound that has been chemically modified in some fashion.

"Surfactant" refers to a surface active agent, which is a compound that alters surface tension. Surface active agents include, for example, detergents, wetting agents and emulsifiers. "Fluorosurfactant" refers to a surface active agent in which at least one hydrogen atom in the surface active agent is replaced with a fluorine atom.

"Polymer" or "polymeric" refers to molecules formed from the chemical union of two or more repeating units. Accordingly, included within the term "polymer" may be, for example, dimers, trimers and oligomers. The polymer may be synthetic, naturally-

- 6 -

occurring or semisynthetic. In a preferred form, "polymer" refers to molecules which comprise 10 or more repeating units.

- "Protein" refers to molecules comprising, and preferably consisting essentially of,  $\alpha$ -amino acids in peptide linkages. Included within the term "protein" are globular
- 5 proteins such as albumins, globulins and histones, and fibrous proteins such as collagens, elastins and keratins. Also included within the term "protein" are "compound proteins," wherein a protein molecule is united with a nonprotein molecule, such as nucleoproteins, mucoproteins, lipoproteins and metalloproteins. The proteins may be naturally-occurring, synthetic or semi-synthetic.
- 10 "Vesicle" refers to an entity which is generally characterized by the presence of one or more walls or membranes which form one or more internal voids. Vesicles may be formulated, for example, from a stabilizing material such as a lipid, including the various lipids described herein, a proteinaceous material, including the various proteins described herein, a polymeric material, including the various polymeric materials described herein,
- 15 and a surfactant, including the various surfactants described herein. As discussed herein, vesicles may also be formulated from carbohydrates and other stabilizing materials, as desired. The lipids, proteins, polymers, surfactants, and/or other vesicle forming stabilizing materials may be natural, synthetic or semi-synthetic. Preferred vesicles are those which comprise walls or membranes formulated from lipids or surfactants. The
- 20 walls or membranes may be concentric or otherwise. The stabilizing compounds may be in the form of one or more monolayers or bilayers. In the case of more than one monolayer or bilayer, the monolayers or bilayers may be concentric. Stabilizing compounds may be used to form a unilamellar vesicle (comprised of one monolayer or bilayer), an oligolamellar vesicle (comprised of about two or about three monolayers or
- 25 bilayers) or a multilamellar vesicle (comprised of more than about three monolayers or bilayers). The walls or membranes of vesicles may be substantially solid (uniform), or they may be porous or semi-porous. The vesicles described herein include such entities commonly referred to as, for example, liposomes, micelles, bubbles, microbubbles, microspheres, lipid-coated bubbles, polymer-coated bubbles and/or protein-coated
- 30 bubbles, microbubbles and/or microspheres, nanospheres, microballoons, microcapsules, aerogels, clathrate bound vesicles, hexagonal H II phase structures, and the like. The internal void of the vesicles may be filled with water, oil, liquids, gases, gaseous

- 7 -

precursors and bioactive agents, if desired, and/or other materials. The vesicles may also comprise a targeting ligand, if desired.

"Liposome" refers to a generally spherical or spheroidal cluster or aggregate of amphipathic compounds, including lipid compounds, typically in the form of one or more 5 concentric layers, for example, monolayers or bilayers. They may also be referred to herein as lipid vesicles. The liposomes may be formulated, for example, from ionic lipids and/or non-ionic lipids. Liposomes formulated from non-ionic lipids may be referred to as niosomes.

"Micelle" refers to colloidal entities formulated from lipids. In certain preferred 10 embodiments, the micelles comprise a monolayer, bilayer, or hexagonal H II phase structure.

"Aerogel" refers to generally spherical or spheroidal entities which are characterized by a plurality of small internal voids. The aerogels may be formulated from synthetic materials (for example, a foam prepared from baking resorcinol and formaldehyde), as well as 15 natural materials, such as carbohydrates (polysaccharides) or proteins.

"Clathrate" refers to a solid, semi-porous or porous particle which may be associated with vesicles. In a preferred form, the clathrates may form a cage-like structure containing cavities which comprise one or more vesicles bound to the clathrate, if desired. A stabilizing material may, if desired, be associated with the clathrate to promote the 20 association of the vesicle with the clathrate. Clathrates may be formulated from, for example, porous apatites, such as calcium hydroxyapatite, and precipitates of polymers and metal ions, such as alginic acid precipitated with calcium salts.

"Emulsion" refers to a mixture of two or more generally immiscible liquids, and is generally in the form of a colloid. The mixture may be of lipids, for example, which may 25 be homogeneously or heterogeneously dispersed throughout the emulsion. Alternatively, the lipids may be aggregated in the form of, for example, clusters or layers, including monolayers or bilayers.

"Suspension" or "dispersion" refers to a mixture, preferably finely divided, of two or more phases (solid, liquid or gas), such as, for example, liquid in liquid, solid in solid, gas 30 in liquid, and the like which preferably can remain stable for extended periods of time.

"Hexagonal H II phase structure" refers to a generally tubular aggregation of lipids in liquid media, for example, aqueous media, in which the hydrophilic portion(s) of the lipids

- 8 -

generally face inwardly in association with an aqueous liquid environment inside the tube. The hydrophobic portion(s) of the lipids generally radiate outwardly and the complex assumes the shape of a hexagonal tube. A plurality of tubes is generally packed together in the hexagonal phase structure.

- 5 "Gas filled vesicle" refers to a vesicle having a gas encapsulated therein. "Gaseous precursor filled vesicle" refers to a vesicle having a gaseous precursor encapsulated therein. The vesicles may be minimally, partially, substantially, or completely filled with the gas and/or gaseous precursor. The term "substantially" as used in reference to the gas and/or gaseous precursor filled vesicles means that greater than about 30% of  
10 the internal void of the substantially filled vesicles comprises a gas and/or gaseous precursor. In certain embodiments, greater than about 40% of the internal void of the substantially filled vesicles comprises a gas and/or gaseous precursor, with greater than about 50% being more preferred. More preferably, greater than about 60% of the internal void of the substantially filled vesicles comprises a gas and/or gaseous  
15 precursor, with greater than about 70% or 75% being more preferred. Even more preferably, greater than about 80% of the internal void of the substantially filled vesicles comprises a gas and/or gaseous precursor, with greater than about 85% or 90% being still more preferred. In particularly preferred embodiments, greater than about 95% of the internal void of the vesicles comprises a gas and/or gaseous precursor, with  
20 about 100% being especially preferred. Alternatively, the vesicles may contain no or substantially no gas or gaseous precursor.

"Patient" refers to animals, including mammals, preferably humans.

- "Region of a patient" refers to a particular area or portion of the patient and in some instances to regions throughout the entire patient. Exemplary of such regions are the  
25 gastrointestinal region, the cardiovascular region (including myocardial tissue), the renal region as well as other bodily regions, tissues, lymphocytes, receptors, organs and the like, including the vasculature and circulatory system, and as well as diseased tissue, including cancerous tissue. "Region of a patient" includes, for example, regions to be imaged with diagnostic imaging, regions to be treated with a bioactive agent, regions to  
30 be targeted for the delivery of a bioactive agent, and regions of elevated temperature. The "region of a patient" is preferably internal, although, if desired, it may be external.

- 9 -

The phrase "vasculature" denotes blood vessels (including arteries, veins and the like).

The phrase "gastrointestinal region" includes the region defined by the esophagus, stomach, small and large intestines, and rectum. The phrase "renal region" denotes the region defined by the kidney and the vasculature that leads directly to and from the

5 kidney, and includes the abdominal aorta.

"Bioactive agent" refers to a substance which may be used in connection with an application that is therapeutic or diagnostic, such as, for example, in methods for diagnosing the presence or absence of a disease in a patient and/or methods for the treatment or prophylaxis of a disease in a patient. "Bioactive agent" also refers to substances which are capable of exerting a biological effect *in vitro* and/or *in vivo*. The 10 bioactive agents may have a neutral, positive or negative charge. Bioactive agents include, for example, targeting ligands, diagnostic agents, therapeutic agents, pharmaceutical agents, drugs, synthetic organic molecules, proteins, peptides, vitamins, steroids, steroid analogs and genetic material, including nucleosides, nucleotides and 15 polynucleotides.

"Diagnostic agent" refers to any agent which may be used in connection with methods for imaging an internal region of a patient and/or diagnosing the presence or absence of a disease in a patient. Exemplary diagnostic agents include, for example, contrast agents for use in connection with ultrasound imaging, magnetic resonance imaging or computed 20 tomography imaging of a patient. Diagnostic agents may also include any other agents useful in facilitating diagnosis of a disease or other condition in a patient, whether or not imaging methodology is employed. As defined herein, a "diagnostic agent" is also a type of bioactive agent.

"Therapeutic agent," "pharmaceutical agent" or "drug" refers to any therapeutic or 25 prophylactic agent which may be used in the treatment (including the prevention, diagnosis, alleviation, or cure) of a malady, affliction, disease or injury in a patient.

Therapeutically useful peptides, polypeptides and polynucleotides (genetic material) may be included within the meaning of the term pharmaceutical or drug. As defined herein, a "therapeutic agent," "pharmaceutical agent" or "drug" is also a type of bioactive agent.

30 "Delivery vehicle" or "vehicle" refers to a composition, substance or material that is capable of transporting, moving or carrying *in vivo* or *in vitro* a bioactive agent,

- 10 -

including a prodrug, a targeting ligand and/or a diagnostic agent. Delivery vehicles include, for example, stabilizing materials, vesicles, liposomes, micelles, aerogels, clathrates, gas filled vesicles, gaseous precursor filled vesicles, gas and gaseous precursor filled vesicles, emulsions, suspensions, dispersions and hexagonal H II phase structures.

"Genetic material" refers generally to nucleotides and polynucleotides, including deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) and ribonucleic acid (RNA). The genetic material may be made by synthetic chemical methodology known to one of ordinary skill in the art, or by the use of recombinant technology, or by a combination thereof. The DNA and RNA may optionally comprise unnatural nucleotides and may be single or double stranded. "Genetic material" also refers to sense and anti-sense DNA and RNA, that is, a nucleotide sequence which is complementary to a specific sequence of nucleotides in DNA and/or RNA.

"Stabilizing material" or "stabilizing compound" refers to any material which is capable of improving the stability of compositions containing the gases, gaseous precursors, prodrugs, targeting ligands and/or other bioactive agents described herein, including, for example, mixtures, suspensions, emulsions, dispersions, vesicles, or the like. Encompassed in the definition of "stabilizing material" are certain of the present bioactive agents and prodrugs. The improved stability involves, for example, the maintenance of a relatively balanced condition, and may be exemplified, for example, by increased resistance of the composition against destruction, decomposition, degradation, and the like. In the case of preferred embodiments involving vesicles filled with gases, gaseous precursors, prodrugs and/or bioactive agents, the stabilizing compounds may serve to either form the vesicles or stabilize the vesicles, in either way serving to minimize or substantially (including completely) prevent the escape of gases, gaseous precursors, prodrugs and/or bioactive agents from the vesicles until said release is desired. The term "substantially," as used in the present context of preventing escape of gases, gaseous precursors, prodrugs and/or bioactive agents from the vesicles, means greater than about 50% is maintained entrapped in the vesicles until release is desired, and preferably greater than about 60%, more preferably greater than about 70%, even more preferably greater than about 80%, still even more preferably greater than about 90%, is maintained entrapped in the vesicles until release is desired. In particularly preferred embodiments,

- 11 -

greater than about 95% of the gases, gaseous precursors, prodrugs and/or bioactive agents are maintained entrapped until release is desired. The gases, gaseous precursors, prodrugs and/or bioactive agents may also be completely maintained entrapped (i.e., about 100% is maintained entrapped), until release is desired. Exemplary stabilizing materials include,  
5 for example, lipids, proteins, polymers, carbohydrates and surfactants. The resulting mixture, suspension, emulsion or the like may comprise walls (i.e., films, membranes and the like) around the bioactive agent, gases and/or gaseous precursors, or may be substantially devoid of walls or membranes, if desired. The stabilizing may, if desired, form droplets. The stabilizing material may also comprise salts and/or sugars. In certain  
10 embodiments, the stabilizing materials may be substantially (including completely) cross-linked. The stabilizing material may have a neutral, positive or negative charge.

"Vesicle stability" refers to the ability of vesicles to retain the gas, gaseous precursor, prodrug and/or other bioactive agents entrapped therein after being exposed, for about one minute, to a pressure of about 100 millimeters (mm) of mercury (Hg). Vesicle stability is  
15 measured in percent (%), this being the fraction of the amount of gas which is originally entrapped in the vesicle and which is retained after release of the pressure. Vesicle stability also includes "vesicle resilience" which is the ability of a vesicle to return to its original size after release of the pressure.

"Droplet" refers to a spherical or spheroidal entity which may be substantially liquid or  
20 which may comprise liquid and solid, solid and gas, liquid and gas, or liquid, solid and gas. Solid materials within a droplet may be, for example, particles, polymers, lipids, proteins, or surfactants.

"Cross-link," "cross-linked" and "cross-linking" generally refer to the linking of two or more stabilizing materials, including lipid, protein, polymer, carbohydrate, surfactant  
25 stabilizing materials and/or bioactive agents, by one or more bridges. The bridges may be composed of one or more elements, groups, or compounds, and generally serve to join an atom from a first stabilizing material molecule to an atom of a second stabilizing material molecule. The cross-link bridges may involve covalent and/or non-covalent associations. Any of a variety of elements, groups, and/or compounds may form the  
30 bridges in the cross-links, and the stabilizing materials may be cross-linked naturally or through synthetic means. For example, cross-linking may occur in nature in material formulated from peptide chains which are joined by disulfide bonds of cystine residues, as

- 12 -

in keratins, insulins and other proteins. Alternatively, cross-linking may be effected by suitable chemical modification, such as, for example, by combining a compound, such as a stabilizing material, and a chemical substance that may serve as a cross-linking agent, which may cause to react by, for example, exposure to heat, high-energy radiation,

5 ultrasonic radiation and the like. Examples include cross-linking by sulfur to form disulfide linkages, cross-linking using organic peroxides, cross-linking of unsaturated materials by means of high-energy radiation, cross-linking with dimethylo carbamate, and the like. If desired, the stabilizing compounds and/or bioactive agents may be substantially cross-linked. The term "substantially" means that greater than about 50% of

10 the stabilizing compounds contain cross-linking bridges. If desired, greater than about 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, 95% or even 100% of the stabilizing compounds contain such cross-linking bridges. Alternatively, the stabilizing materials may be non-cross-linked, i.e., such that greater than about 50% of the stabilizing compounds are devoid of cross-linking bridges, and if desired, greater than about 60%, 70%, 80%, 90%, 95% or even

15 100% of the stabilizing compounds are devoid of cross-linking bridges.

"Covalent association" refers to an intermolecular association or bond which involves the sharing of electrons in the bonding orbitals of two atoms.

"Non-covalent association" refers to intermolecular interaction among two or more separate molecules which does not involve a covalent bond. Intermolecular interaction is

20 dependent upon a variety of factors, including, for example, the polarity of the involved molecules, and the charge (positive or negative), if any, of the involved molecules. Non-covalent associations are selected from ionic interactions, dipole-dipole interactions, van der Waal's forces, and combinations thereof.

"Ionic interaction" or "electrostatic interaction" refers to intermolecular interaction

25 among two or more molecules, each of which is positively or negatively charged. Thus, for example, "ionic interaction" or "electrostatic interaction" refers to the attraction between a first, positively charged molecule and a second, negatively charged molecule. Ionic or electrostatic interactions include, for example, the attraction between a negatively charged stabilizing material, for example, genetic material, and a positively charged lipid,

30 for example, a cationic lipid, such as lauryltrimethylammonium bromide.

"Dipole-dipole interaction" refers generally to the attraction which can occur among two or more polar molecules. Thus, "dipole-dipole interaction" refers to the attraction of the

- 13 -

uncharged, partial positive end of a first polar molecule, commonly designated as  $\delta^+$ , to the uncharged, partial negative end of a second polar molecule, commonly designated as  $\delta^-$ . Dipole-dipole interactions are exemplified by the attraction between the electropositive head group, for example, the choline head group, of phosphatidylcholine and an 5 electronegative atom, for example, a heteroatom, such as oxygen, nitrogen or sulphur, which is present in a stabilizing material, such as a polysaccharide. "Dipole-dipole interaction" also refers to intermolecular hydrogen bonding in which a hydrogen atom serves as a bridge between electronegative atoms on separate molecules and in which a 10 hydrogen atom is held to a first molecule by a covalent bond and to a second molecule by electrostatic forces.

"Van der Waal's forces" refers to the attractive forces between non-polar molecules that are accounted for by quantum mechanics. Van der Waal's forces are generally associated with momentary dipole moments which are induced by neighboring molecules and which involve changes in electron distribution.

15 "Hydrogen bond" refers to an attractive force, or bridge, which may occur between a hydrogen atom which is bonded covalently to an electronegative atom, for example, oxygen, sulfur, or nitrogen, and another electronegative atom. The hydrogen bond may occur between a hydrogen atom in a first molecule and an electronegative atom in a second molecule (intermolecular hydrogen bonding). Also, the hydrogen bond may occur 20 between a hydrogen atom and an electronegative atom which are both contained in a single molecule (intramolecular hydrogen bonding).

"Hydrophilic interaction" refers to molecules or portions of molecules which may substantially bind with, absorb and/or dissolve in water. This may result in swelling and/or the formation of reversible gels.

25 "Hydrophobic interaction" refers to molecules or portions of molecules which do not substantially bind with, absorb and/or dissolve in water.

"Biocompatible" refers to materials which are generally not injurious to biological functions and which will not result in any degree of unacceptable toxicity, including allergenic responses and disease states.

30 "In combination with" refers to the incorporation of bioactive agents in a stabilizing composition of the present invention, including emulsion, suspensions and vesicles. The prodrug, targeting ligand and/or bioactive agent can be combined with the stabilizing

- 14 -

- compositions in any of a variety of ways. For example, the prodrug, bioactive agent and/or targeting ligand may be associated covalently and/or non-covalently with the compounds or stabilizing materials. In the case of vesicles, the prodrug, bioactive agent and/or targeting ligand may be entrapped within the internal void of the vesicle; may be
- 5 integrated within the layer(s) or wall(s) of the vesicle, for example, by being interspersed among stabilizing materials which form or are contained within the vesicle layer(s) or wall(s); may be located on the surface of a vesicle or non-vesicular stabilizing material; and/or any combination thereof. In any case, the prodrug, bioactive agent and/or targeting ligand may interact chemically with the walls of the vesicles, including, for example, the
- 10 inner and/or outer surfaces of the vesicle and may remain substantially adhered thereto. Such interaction may take the form of, for example, non-covalent association or bonding, ionic interactions, electrostatic interactions, dipole-dipole interactions, hydrogen bonding, van der Waal's forces, covalent association or bonding, cross-linking or any other interaction, as will be apparent to one skilled in the art in view of the present disclosure.
- 15 In certain embodiments, the interaction may result in the stabilization of the vesicle. The bioactive agent may also interact with the inner or outer surface of the vesicle or the non-vesicular stabilizing material in a limited manner. Such limited interaction would permit migration of the bioactive agent or prodrug, for example, from the surface of a first vesicle to the surface of a second vesicle, or from the surface of a first non-vesicular stabilizing
- 20 material to a second non-vesicular stabilizing material. Alternatively, such limited interaction may permit migration of the prodrug or bioactive agent, for example, from within the walls of a vesicle and/or non-vesicular stabilizing material to the surface of a vesicle and/or non-vesicular stabilizing material, and vice versa, or from inside a vesicle or non-vesicular stabilizing material to within the walls of a vesicle or non-vesicular
- 25 stabilizing material and vice versa.

"Targeting ligand" refers to any material or substance which may promote targeting of tissues and/or receptors *in vivo* or *in vitro* with the compositions of the present invention. The targeting ligand may be synthetic, semi-synthetic, or naturally-occurring. Materials or substances which may serve as targeting ligands include, for example, proteins, including

30 antibodies, antibody fragments, hormones, hormone analogues, glycoproteins and lectins, peptides, polypeptides, amino acids, sugars, saccharides, including monosaccharides and polysaccharides, carbohydrates, vitamins, steroids, steroid analogs, hormones, cofactors,

- 15 -

bioactive agents, and genetic material, including nucleosides, nucleotides, nucleotide acid constructs and polynucleotides. A "precursor" to a targeting ligand refers to any material or substance which may be converted to a targeting ligand. Exemplary targeting precursor moieties include maleimide groups, disulfide groups, such as ortho-pyridyl disulfide, 5 vinylsulfone groups, azide groups, and  $\alpha$ -ido acetyl groups.

"Tissue" refers generally to specialized cells which may perform a particular function. The term "tissue" may refer to an individual cell or a plurality or aggregate of cells, for example, membranes or organs. The term "tissue" also includes reference to an abnormal cell or a plurality of abnormal cells. Exemplary tissues include myocardial tissue, 10 including myocardial cells and cardiomyocytes, membranous tissues, including endothelium and epithelium, laminae, blood, connective tissue, including interstitial tissue, and tumors.

"Receptor" refers to a molecular structure within a cell or on the surface of a cell which is generally characterized by the selective binding of a specific substance. Exemplary 15 receptors include cell-surface receptors for peptide hormones, neurotransmitters, antigens, complement fragments, immunoglobulins and cytoplasmic receptors for steroid hormones.

"Intracellular" or "intracellularly" refers to the area within the plasma membrane of a cell, including the protoplasm, cytoplasm and/or nucleoplasm. "Intracellular delivery" refers to the delivery of a bioactive agent, such as a targeting ligand and/or prodrug, into 20 the area within the plasma membrane of a cell. "Cell" refers to any one of the minute protoplasmic masses which make up organized tissue, comprising a mass of protoplasm surrounded by a membrane, including nucleated and unnucleated cells and organelles.

"Alkyl" refers to linear, branched or cyclic hydrocarbon groups. Preferably, the alkyl is a linear or branched hydrocarbon group, more preferably a linear hydrocarbon group. 25 Exemplary linear and branched alkyl groups include, for example, methyl, ethyl, n-propyl, i-propyl, n-butyl, t-butyl, n-pentyl, hexyl, heptyl, octyl, nonyl, and decyl groups. Exemplary cyclic hydrocarbon groups (cycloalkyl groups) include, for example, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl and cycloheptyl groups. "Fluorinated alkyl" refers to an alkyl group which is substituted with one or more fluorine atoms, including, for example, 30 fluorinated alkyl groups of the formula  $CF_3-(CF_2)_n-(CH_2)_m-$ , where each of m and n is independently an integer from 0 to about 22.

- 16 -

"Acyl" refers to an alkyl-CO- group wherein alkyl is as previously described. Preferred acyl groups comprise alkyl of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms. Exemplary acyl groups include acetyl, propanoyl, 2-methylpropanoyl, butanoyl and palmitoyl. "Fluoroacyl" refers to an acyl group that is substituted with one or more fluorine atoms, up to and including 5 perfluorinated acyl groups.

- "Alkylene" refers to a straight or branched bivalent aliphatic hydrocarbon group having from 1 to about 30 carbon atoms. The alkylene group may be straight, branched or cyclic. The alkylene group may also be unsaturated and/or substituted with one or more "alkyl group substituents." There may be optionally inserted along the alkylene group one or 10 more oxygen, sulphur or substituted or unsubstituted nitrogen atoms, wherein the nitrogen substituent is alkyl as previously described. Exemplary alkylene groups include methylene, ethylene (-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-), propylene (-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-), cyclohexylene (-C<sub>6</sub>H<sub>10</sub>-), -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-CH<sub>2</sub>- , -(CF<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-, wherein n is an integer from 1 to about 22 and m is an 15 integer from 0 to about 22, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-N(R)-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-, wherein each of m and n is independently an integer from 0 to about 30 and R is hydrogen or alkyl, methylenedioxy (-O-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-) and ethylenedioxy (-O-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-O-). It is preferred that the alkylene group have about 2 to about 3 carbon atoms. The alkylene group may comprise a diradical, triradical or tetraradical.
- 20 The present invention describes novel prodrugs comprising fluorinated amphiphiles. In one embodiment, the present invention describes compounds comprising a bioactive agent covalently bonded, via a linking group, to a fluorinated amphiphilic moiety. Alternatively, the bioactive agent may be covalently bonded directly to the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety. Encompassed in the use of these new compounds are novel 25 delivery vehicles and methods of targeting. The compounds of the present invention offer an improved therapeutic index and a capacity for activation either by *in situ* hydrolysis of labile bonds, by ultrasound mediation, or by other energy-mediated delivery, such as microwave, radiofrequency or magnetic induction hypothermia, laser-directed photoactivation, hyperthermia or ablation. The compounds of the present 30 invention provide for the incorporation of the prodrugs into fluorinated gas bubbles and fluorinated emulsions as well as other oil, liquid and/or solid matrix drug delivery systems. The novel prodrugs of the present invention utilize fluorinated lipids and

- 17 -

fluorinated lipid-soluble amphiphilic moieties which enable the bioactive agent to be incorporated into an acoustically active matrix, preferably where the matrix comprises one or more fluorinated gases and/or gaseous precursors. The present invention also provides site specific delivery and targeting to improve efficacy and decrease toxicity of the bioactive agent. Some aspects of the invention focus on applications where membrane traversal or fusion facilitates delivery. In the case of topical applications, such as of anti-inflammatories, water insolubility promotes skin penetration and lifetime of the medicament at the targeted site.

Generally, the invention describes derivatives of different classes of bioactive agents. These derivatives are designed to improve the lipophilicity of the bioactive agents and to provide chemical compatibility with stabilizing materials, lipid vesicles and other delivery vehicles. To facilitate their stable insertion into stabilizing materials and/or vesicle walls, fluorinated amphiphilic moieties capable of fusion or intercalation with stabilizing materials and/or vesicle compounds are covalently bound to the bioactive agents with or without a linking group. The prodrugs and/or fluorinated amphiphilic moieties may be in the form of a vesicle or may be non-vesicular, as desired. The nature of the bonds (including the linking group) between the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety and the bioactive agent is sufficiently labile to be readily hydrolyzed by native enzymes within the target cell or tissue or, alternatively, hydrolyzed by ultrasound or other applications of external energy. Other embodiments of the invention comprise derivitization of the prodrugs and/or delivery vehicles with targeting moieties such as carbohydrate adducts which exhibit affinity for receptor binding sites and/or spacer polymers such as polyethylene glycol. In still other embodiments, the prodrug will retain the bioactive properties of the underivatized form of the bioactive agent, but the lipid and other targeting facilitators will enhance efficiency of intercellular delivery.

A wide variety of bioactive agents are useful in the present invention. Preferably the bioactive agent is derivatized or functionalized with a hydrophobic, fluorinated amphiphilic moiety, such as those described herein. The hydrophobic moiety increases the lipophilicity of the drug and may increase its octanol/water partition coefficient. The prodrugs are readily incorporated into lipid vesicles, micelles, monolayers, lipid and oil emulsions and polymeric microspheres. In a particularly preferred embodiment, the

- 18 -

prodrugs may be incorporated into the stabilizing materials surrounding gas bubbles, gaseous precursors, foams and foam precursors.

The fluorinated amphiphilic portion of the prodrug comprises a lipophilic material which enables the bioactive agent to solvate or partition into the gas and/or gaseous 5 precursor matrix. A wide variety of different fluorinated amphiphilic materials may be used to create the prodrugs of the invention. Preferably the amphiphilic moiety consists of one or two polycarbon chains, each containing three or more fluorine atoms. Most preferably the tails or termini of the carbon chains at the end distal to the acyl end are heavily fluorinated or most preferably perfluorinated, while the proximal ends are 10 hydrogenated. Alternatively, the amphiphilic moiety may comprise a polyfluorinated carbohydrate derivative. In either case, the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety is covalently bound to the desired drug to create a prodrug suitable for incorporation into the fluorinated matrix.

Examples of suitable fluorinated amphiphilic moieties are discussed in detail 15 herein, and include fluoroacyl chains of varying lengths and degrees of saturation, fluorinated diacylglyceryl derivatives, fluorinated derivatives of phosphocholine, fluoroglycosides and other fluorinated amphiphilic moieties, preferably polyethylene glycol Telomer B and Zonyl® series fluorosurfactants (DuPont Co., Wilmington, DE). Still other fluorinated amphiphilic compounds which may serve in this capacity are described in U.S. 20 Application Serial No. 08/465,868, filed June 6, 1995, and U.S. Patent Nos. 5,276,146, 5,344,930 and 5,562,893, the disclosures of each of which are hereby incorporated by reference herein in their entirety.

In one embodiment, the present invention describes a compound of the formula (I):

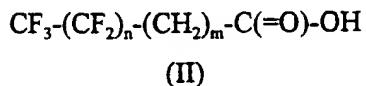


where R is a fluorinated amphiphilic moiety; X is a linking group; p is an integer of 0 or 1; and D is a bioactive agent.

The fluorinated amphiphilic moiety R in formula (I) may be, for example, a 30 compound of formula (II), formula (III), formula (IV), formula (V), formula (VI), formula (VII) and/or formula (VIII).

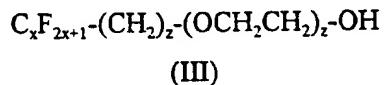
- 19 -

In formula (I), R may be a fluorinated fatty acyl derivative, such as, for example, that of formula (II):



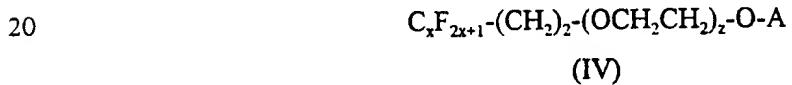
5 where n is an integer of from about 7 to about 13, preferably from about 9 to about 11; and m is an integer of from 1 to about 4, preferably 1 to about 2. Preferably, the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety of formula (II) attaches via the -COOH group to the linking group or bioactive agent.

In formula (I), R may also be a fluorinated surfactant, such as, for example, a PEG  
10 Telomer type compound of formula (III):



where x is an integer of from about 6 to about 12, preferably from about 8 to about 10, more preferably about 9; and z is an integer of from about 8 to about 20; preferably from 15 about 8 to about 16; still more preferably from about 8 to about 12; even more preferably about 8 to about 10; most preferably about 9. Preferably, the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety of formula (III) attaches via the -OH group to the linking group or bioactive agent.

Further, in formula (I), R may be a fluorinated carbohydrate derivative, such as, for example, that of formula (IV):



where x is an integer of from about 6 to about 12; preferably from about 8 to about 10; more preferably 9; z is an integer of from about 8 to about 20; preferably from about 8 to about 16; more preferably from about 8 to about 12; still more preferably from about 8 to 25 about 10; most preferably about 9; and A is a monosaccharide or a disaccharide. Suitable monosaccharides and disaccharides include, for example, allose, altrose, glucose, dextrose, mannose, glycerose, gulose, idose, galactose, talose, fructose, psicose, sorbose, rhamnose, tagatose, ribose, arabinose, xylose, lyxose, ribulose, xylulose, erythrose, threose, erythrulose, fucose, sucrose, lactose, maltose, isomaltose, trehalose, cellobiose and the like. Preferably, the monosaccharide or disaccharide is glucose, dextrose, fructose, mannose, galactose, glucosamine, galactosamine, maltose, sucrose or lactose. Preferably, the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety of formula (IV) attaches via the sugar moiety "A" to

- 20 -

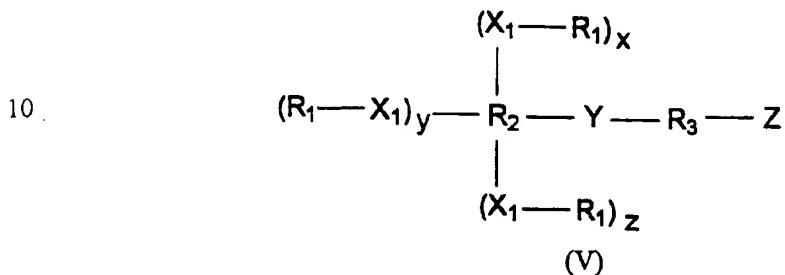
the linking group or bioactive agent. For example, the "-CHO" group on the sugar moiety may be converted to a

-COOH group by methods known to one skilled in the art (e.g., reacting the sugar with Br<sub>2</sub> + H<sub>2</sub>O or with HNO<sub>3</sub>). Thereafter, the sugar moiety may be attached via the -COOH

5 group to the linking group or bioactive agent.

In formula (I), R may also be a fluorinated lipophilic derivative, such as, for example, that of formula (V), which includes the compounds described in U.S.

Application Serial No. 08/465,868, filed June 6, 1995, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference herein in its entirety:



where each of x, y and z is independently 0 or 1; each X<sub>1</sub> is independently -O-, -S-, -SO-, -SO<sub>2</sub>-, -NR<sub>4</sub>-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-O-, -O-C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-NR<sub>4</sub>- or -NR<sub>4</sub>-C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-; X<sub>2</sub> is O or S; Y is a direct bond or -X<sub>3</sub>-M(=O)(OR<sub>5</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-, where q is 1 or 2; X<sub>3</sub> is a direct bond or -O-; M is P or S; Z is hydrogen, the residue of a hydrophilic polymer, a saccharide residue or -N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>r</sub>, where r is 2 or 3; each R<sub>1</sub> is independently an alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms or a fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms; R<sub>2</sub> is a direct bond or an alkylene linking group of 1 to about 10 carbon atoms; R<sub>3</sub> is a direct bond or an alkylene diradical of 1 to about 10 carbon atoms; each of R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> is independently 15 hydrogen or an alkyl group of 1 to about 8 carbon atoms; and each R<sub>6</sub> is independently hydrogen, an alkyl group of 1 to about 8 carbon atoms or a residue of a hydrophilic polymer; provided that at least one of x, y and z is 1, at least one of R<sub>1</sub> is a fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms; provided that when R<sub>2</sub> is a direct bond, two of x, y and z are each 0. Preferably, the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety of formula (V) 20 attaches via the Z group to the linking group or bioactive agent. As discussed below, the Z group may contain, for example, a reactive carboxyl, amine, hydroxyl or thiol group that can attach to the linking group or bioactive agent. Alternatively, if the Z group is a 25

- 21 -

saccharide residue, it may be attached to the linking group or bioactive agent following the method described for the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety of formula (IV).

In formula (V), each of x, y and z is independently 0 or 1, provided that at least one of x, y and z is 1. In some embodiments, two of x, y and z are each 0. In other 5 embodiments, one of x, y and z is 0 or 1 and the other two of x, y and z are each 1, with one of x, y and z being 0 and the other two of x, y and z being 1 being more preferred. In other embodiments, each of x, y and z is 1.

Each  $X_1$  is independently -O-, -S-, -SO-, -SO<sub>2</sub>-, -NR<sub>4</sub>-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-O-, -O-C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-NR<sub>4</sub>- or -NR<sub>4</sub>-C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-. Preferably, each  $X_1$  is independently -O-, -S-

10 , -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-O-, -O-C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-NR<sub>4</sub>- or -NR<sub>4</sub>-C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-. More preferably, each  $X_1$  is independently -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-O- or -O-C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-, most preferably -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-O-.

Each  $X_2$  is O or S, preferably O.

Y is a direct bond or -X<sub>3</sub>-M(=O)(OR<sub>5</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-, where q is 1 or 2. Preferably, Y is 15 -X<sub>3</sub>-M(=O)(OR<sub>5</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-. M is P or S, preferably P. X<sub>3</sub> is a direct bond or -O-, preferably, a direct bond.

Z is hydrogen atom, the residue of a hydrophilic polymer, a saccharide residue or -N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>r</sub>, where r is 2 or 3. In preferred embodiments, Z is -N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>r</sub>.

Each R<sub>1</sub> is independently an alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms or a 20 fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms, provided that at least one of R<sub>1</sub> is a fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms. Thus, when only one of x, y and z is 1, R<sub>1</sub> is necessarily a fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms. In preferred embodiments, where one or none of x, y and z is 0, and preferably where one of x, y and z is 0 and the other two of x, y and z are each 1, at least one of R<sub>1</sub> is an alkyl group of 1 to 25 about 30 carbon atoms and at least one of R<sub>1</sub> is a fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms. In other embodiments, each R<sub>1</sub> is independently a fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms. When a fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms, R<sub>1</sub> is preferably a polyfluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms, with a perfluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms being more preferred. When a 30 fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms, R<sub>1</sub> is preferably C<sub>n</sub>F<sub>2n+1</sub>-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>m</sub>-, where n is 1 to about 16, preferably about 9 to about 14, and m is 0 to about 18, preferably 1 to about 10, more preferably 1 to about 4.

- 22 -

R<sub>2</sub> is a direct bond or an alkylene linking group of 1 to about 10 carbon atoms, provided that when R<sub>2</sub> is a direct bond, two of x, y and z are each 0. Preferably, R<sub>2</sub> is a direct bond or an alkylene linking group of 1 to about 4 carbon atoms. More preferably, R<sub>2</sub> is an alkylene linking group of about 3 carbons. Even more preferably, R<sub>2</sub> is -CH<sub>2</sub>-.

5 CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-.

R<sub>3</sub> is a direct bond or an alkylene diradical of 1 to about 10 carbons. Preferably, R<sub>3</sub> is a direct bond or an alkylene diradical of 1 to about 4 carbon atoms. More preferably, R<sub>3</sub> is an alkylene diradical of about 2 carbon atoms. Even more preferably, R<sub>3</sub> is -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-.

Each of R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> is independently a hydrogen atom or an alkyl group of 1 to 10 about 8 carbon atoms, preferably of 1 to about 4 carbon atoms. More preferably, each of R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> is a hydrogen atom.

R<sub>6</sub> is a hydrogen atom, an alkyl group of 1 to about 8 carbon atoms or a residue of a hydrophilic polymer. Preferably, R<sub>6</sub> is a hydrogen atom or an alkyl group of 1 to about 4 carbon atoms. More preferably, R<sub>6</sub> is a hydrogen atom or a methyl group, with a methyl 15 group being even more preferred.

When any symbol appears more than once in a particular formula or substituent, such as, for example, in formula (V), its meaning in each instance is independent of the other, unless otherwise indicated. This independence of meaning is subject to any of the stated provisos. Also, it is intended that when each of two or more adjacent symbols is 20 defined as being "a direct bond" to provide multiple, adjacent direct bonds, the multiple and adjacent direct bonds devolve into a single direct bond.

Z and R<sub>6</sub> in the definition of Z in formula (V), can be the residue of a hydrophilic polymer. Exemplary polymers from which Z and/or R<sub>6</sub> can be derived include polymers in which the repeating units contain one or more hydroxy groups (polyhydroxy polymers), 25 including, for example, poly(vinyl alcohol); polymers in which the repeating units contain one or more amino groups (polyamine polymers), including, for example, peptides, polypeptides, proteins and lipoproteins, such as albumin and natural lipoproteins; polymers in which the repeating units contain one or more carboxy groups (polycarboxy polymers), including, for example, carboxymethylcellulose, alginic acid and salts thereof, 30 such as sodium and calcium alginate, glycosaminoglycans and salts thereof, including salts of hyaluronic acid, phosphorylated and sulfonated derivatives of carbohydrates, genetic material, such as interleukin-2 and interferon, and phosphorothioate oligomers; and

polymers in which the repeating units contain one or more saccharide moieties (polysaccharide polymers), including, for example, carbohydrates. The molecular weight of the polymers from which Z and/or R<sub>6</sub> are derived may vary, and is generally about 50 to about 5,000,000, with polymers having a molecular weight of about 100 to about 50,000 being preferred. More preferred polymers have a molecular weight of about 150 to about 5, 10,000, with molecular weights of 200 to about 8,000 being even more preferred.

Preferred polymers from which Z and/or R<sub>6</sub> are derived include, for example, poly(ethylene glycol) (PEG), poly(vinylpyrrolidine), polyoxomers, polysorbate and poly(vinyl alcohol), with PEG polymers being particularly preferred. Preferred among the 10 PEG polymers are PEG polymers having a molecular weight of from about 100 to about 10,000. More preferably, the PEG polymers have a molecular weight of from about 200 to about 8,000, with PEG 2,000, PEG 5,000 and PEG 8,000, which have molecular weights of 2,000, 5,000 and 8,000, respectively, being even more preferred. Other suitable hydrophilic polymers, in addition to those exemplified above, will be readily apparent to 15 one skilled in the art based on the present disclosure. Generally, polymers from which Z and/or R<sub>6</sub> are derived include polymers that can be incorporated in the fluorinated amphiphilic compounds via alkylation or acylation reactions.

As with the various polymers exemplified above, it is contemplated that the polymeric residues can contain functional groups in addition, for example, to those typically involved in linking the polymeric residues to the fluorinated amphiphilic 20 compounds. Such functionalities include, for example, carboxyl, amine, hydroxy and thiol groups. These functional groups on the polymeric residues can be further reacted, if desired, with materials which are generally reactive with such functional groups and which can assist in targeting specific tissues in the body including, for example, diseased tissue. 25 Exemplary materials which can be reacted with the additional functional groups include, for example, proteins, including antibodies, carbohydrates, peptides, glycopeptides, glycolipids, lectins and nucleosides.

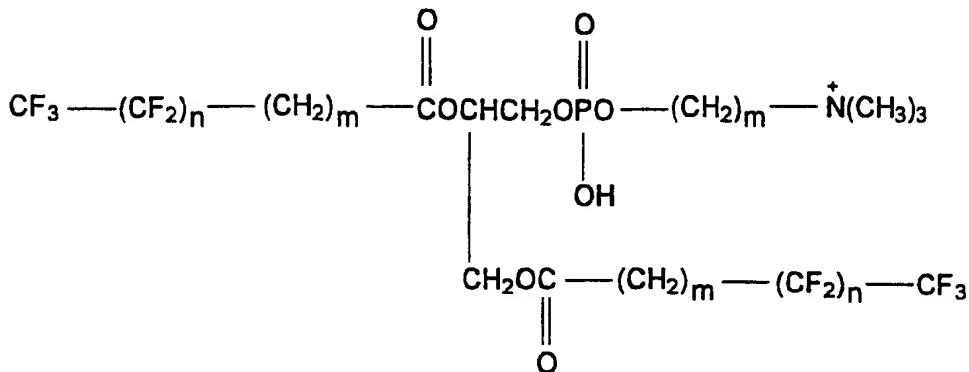
In addition to residues of hydrophilic polymers, Z in formula (V) can be a 30 saccharide residue. Exemplary saccharides from which Z can be derived include, for example, monosaccharides or sugar alcohols, such as erythrose, threose, ribose, arabinose, xylose, lyxose, fructose, sorbitol, mannitol and sedoheptulose, with preferred monosaccharides being fructose, mannose, xylose, arabinose, mannitol and sorbitol; and

- 24 -

disaccharides, such as lactose, sucrose, maltose and cellobiose. Other saccharides include, for example, inositol and ganglioside head groups. Other suitable saccharides, in addition to those exemplified above, will be readily apparent to one skilled in the art based on the present disclosure. Generally, saccharides from which Z is derived include saccharides

- 5 that can be incorporated in the fluorinated amphiphilic compounds via alkylation or acylation reactions.

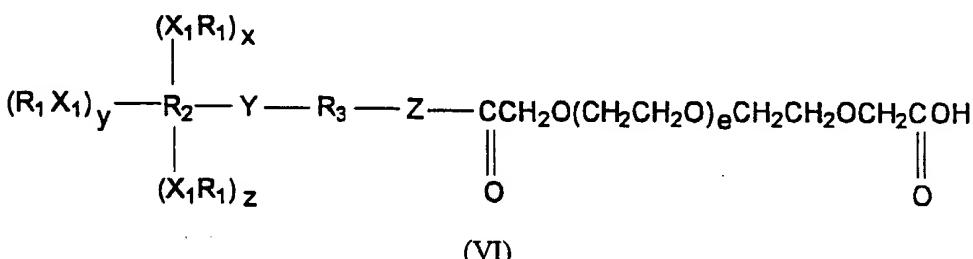
Preferred fluorinated amphiphilic moieties that are within the scope of formula (V) are the fluorinated amphiphilic moieties of the formula (Va):



10 (Va)

where n is an integer of from about 7 to about 13, preferably from about 9 to about 11; and m is an integer of from about 1 to about 4, preferably 1 to about 2. Preferably, the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety of formula (Va) attaches via the -OH group (located on the phosphorous atom) to the linking group or bioactive agent.

- 15 In formula (I), R may also be a fluorinated amphiphilic moiety of formula (VI);

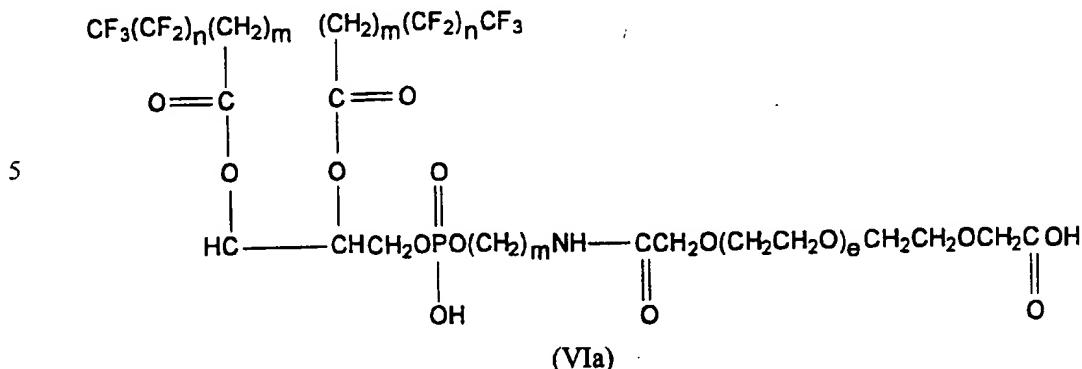


where  $R_1$ ,  $R_2$ ,  $R_3$ ,  $X_1$ ,  $Y$ ,  $Z$ ,  $x$ ,  $y$  and  $z$  are as defined in formula (V), including the preferred embodiments thereof; and where  $e$  is an integer of from 1 to about 30, preferably about 3 to about 20, more preferably about 4 to about 16, still more preferably about 4 to about 12.

- 25 -

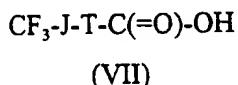
most preferably about 7 to about 9. Preferably, the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety of formula (VI) attaches via the -COOH group to the linking group or bioactive agent.

In a more preferred embodiment, the compound of formula (VI) may be a compound of the formula (VIa):

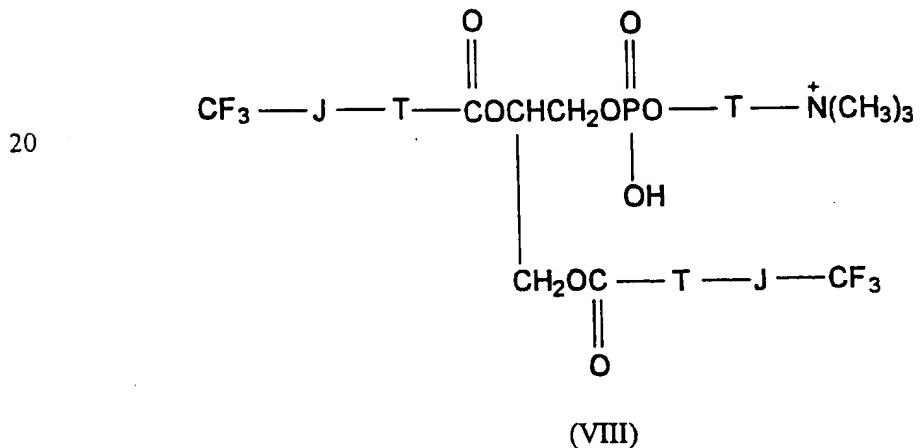


where n and m are as defined above in formula (Va) and where e is as defined above in formula (VI). Preferably, the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety of formula (VIa) attaches via the -COOH group to the linking group or bioactive agent.

Further, in formula (I), R may be a fluorinated fatty acyl derivative, such as, for example, that of formula (VII):



Still further, in formula (I), R may be a fluorinated lipophilic derivative, such as, for example, that of formula (VIII):



- 26 -

In the above formulas (VII) and (VIII), J is  $\text{(-(C=C)}_{p1}\text{-(CF}_2\text{)}_{p2}\text{-(C=C)}_{p3}\text{-(CF}_2\text{)}_{p4}\text{-(C=C)}_{p5}\text{-(CF}_2\text{)}_{p6}\text{-(C=C)}_{p7}\text{-(CF}_2\text{)}_{p8}\text{-(C=C)}_{p9}\text{-(CF}_2\text{)}_{p10}\text{-(C=C)}_{p11}\text{-(CF}_2\text{)}_{p12}\text{-(C=C)}_{p13}\text{-})$ , where p1, p2, p3, p4, p5, p6, p7, p8, p9, p10, p11, p12 and p13 are independently an integer of 0, 1 or 2; provided that the sum of (p1 + p2 + p3 + p4 + p5 + p6 + p7 + p8 + p9 + p10 + p11 + p12 + p13) is an integer of from about 7 to about 13, and provided that at least one of p2, p4, p6, p8, p10 or p12 is an integer of at least 1; and where T is  $\text{(-(C=C)}_{t1}\text{-(CH}_2\text{)}_{t2}\text{-(C=C)}_{t3}\text{-(CH}_2\text{)}_{t4}\text{-})$ , where t1, t2, t3, and t4 are independently an integer of 0, 1 or 2; provided that the sum of (t1 + t2 + t3 + t4) is an integer of from 1 to about 4. Preferably, the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety of formula (VII) attaches via the -COOH group to the linking group or 10 bioactive agent. Preferably, the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety of formula (VIII) attaches via the -OH group (located on the phosphorous atom) to the linking group or bioactive agent.

In the compound of formula (I), X is a linking group when p is 1. Preferably, X is a biodegradable linking group selected from the group consisting of an amide group, an 15 ester group, an ether group, an anhydride group, a disulfide group, an SO<sub>2</sub>NH group, an amino group, a thio group and an alkyl group. More preferably, X is a linking group selected from the group consisting of -CONH-, -NCONH-, -C(=O)-O-, -O-, -C(=O)-O-C(=O)-, -S-S-, -SO<sub>2</sub>NH-, -NH-, -S-, and -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-, where n is an integer of from 1 to about 12, preferably 20 from 1 to about 8, more preferably from 1 to about 4.

Alternatively, p is 0, such that no linking group, *per se*, is in the compound. Generally, p can be 0 if the bioactive agent contains an amide group, an ester group, an ether group, an anhydride group, a disulfide group, an SO<sub>2</sub>NH group, an amino group, a thio group or an alkyl group that can covalently bond to the fluorinated amphiphilic 25 moiety. In view of the present disclosure and with knowledge of basic synthetic organic chemistry, one skilled in the art could readily determine whether any particular bioactive agent could be covalently bonded to a fluorinated amphiphilic moiety without using a linking group.

In the compound of formula (I), D may be a wide variety of bioactive agents. 30 Suitable bioactive agents for use in the prodrugs of the present invention include, for example, antineoplastic agents, blood products, biological response modifiers, anti-fungal agents, hormones, steroids, vitamins, peptides, peptide analogs, enzymes, anti-allergenic

- 27 -

agents, anti-coagulation agents, circulatory agents, anti-tubercular agents, anti-viral agents, anti-anginal agents, antibiotics, anti-inflammatory agents, analgesics, anti-protozoan agents, anti-rheumatic agents, narcotics, cardiac glycoside agents, chelates, neuromuscular blocking agents, sedatives (hypnotics), local anesthetic agents, general 5 anesthetic agents, radioactive particles, radioactive ions, X-ray contrast agents, monoclonal antibodies, polyclonal antibodies and genetic material. In view of the present disclosure, one skilled in the art could determine whether any particular bioactive agent could be used in the compounds of the present invention. Examples of suitable bioactive agents are listed below; however, the list is exemplary only and is not intended to limit the 10 bioactive agents that may be used in the present invention.

10      *Antineoplastic agents*, include, for example, platinum compounds (e.g., spiroplatin, cisplatin, and carboplatin), adriamycin, mitomycin c, ansamitocin, bleomycin, bleomycin sulfate, cytosine arabinoside, arabinosyl adenine, mercaptopolylysine, vincristine, busulfan, chlorambucil, melphalan (e.g., PAM, L-PAM 15 or phenylalanine mustard), mercaptopurine, mitotane, procarbazine hydrochloride, dactinomycin (actinomycin D), daunorubicin hydrochloride, doxorubicin hydrochloride, taxol, mitomycin, plicamycin (mithramycin), aminoglutethimide, estramustine phosphate sodium, flutamide, leuprolide acetate, megestrol acetate, tamoxifen citrate, testolactone, trilostane, amsacrine (m-AMSA), asparaginase (L-asparaginase), *Erwina* asparaginase, 20 etoposide (VP-16), interferon  $\alpha$ -2a, interferon  $\alpha$ -2b, teniposide (VM-26), vinblastine sulfate (VLB), vincristine sulfate, methotrexate, and carzelesin.

20      *Blood products*, include, for example, erythropoietin, parenteral iron, hemin, and hematoporphyrins and their derivatives.

25      *Biological response modifiers*, include, for example, muramyldipeptide, muramyltripeptide, lymphokines (e.g., bacterial endotoxin such as lipopolysaccharide, macrophage activation factor), sub-units of bacteria (such as Mycobacteria, Corynebacteria), the synthetic dipeptide, N-acetyl-muramyl-L-alanyl-D-isoglutamine, and prostaglandins.

30      *Anti-fungal agents*, include, for example, ketoconazole, nystatin, griseofulvin, flucytosine (5-fc), miconazole, amphotericin B, ricin, and  $\beta$ -lactam antibiotics (e.g., sulfazecin).

- 28 -

- Hormones and steroids*, include, for example, growth hormone, melanocyte stimulating hormone, adrenocortiotropic hormone, dexamethasone, dexamethasone acetate, dexamethasone sodium phosphate, cortisone, cortisone acetate, hydrocortisone, hydrocortisone acetate, hydrocortisone cypionate, hydrocortisone sodium phosphate,
- 5 hydrocortisone sodium succinate, prednisone, prednisolone, prednisolone acetate, prednisolone sodium phosphate, prednisolone tebutate, prednisolone pivalate, triamcinolone, triamcinolone acetonide, triamcinolone hexacetonide, triamcinolone diacetate, methylprednisolone, methylprednisolone acetate, methylprednisolone sodium succinate, flunsolide, beclomethasone dipropionate, betamethasone sodium phosphate,
- 10 betamethasone, vetamethasone disodium phosphate, vetamethasone sodium phosphate, betamethasone acetate, betamethasone disodium phosphate, chloroprednisone acetate, corticosterone, desoxycorticosterone, desoxycorticosterone acetate, desoxycorticosterone pivalate, desoximethasone, estradiol, fludrocortisone, fludrocortisone acetate, dichlorisone acetate, fluorohydrocortisone, fluorometholone, fluprednisolone, paramethasone,
- 15 paramethasone acetate, androsterone, fluoxymesterone, aldosterone, methandrostenolone, methylandrostenediol, methyl testosterone, norethandrolone, testosterone, testosterone enanthate, testosterone propionate, equilenin, equilin, estradiol benzoate, estradiol dipropionate, estriol, estrone, estrone benzoate, acetoxyprogrenolone, anagestone acetate, chlormadinone acetate, flurogestone acetate, hydroxymethylprogesterone,
- 20 hydroxymethylprogesterone acetate, hydroxyprogesterone, hydroxyprogesterone acetate, hydroxyprogesterone caproate, melengestrol acetate, normethisterone, pregnenolone, progesterone, ethynodiol estradiol, mestranol, dimethisterone, ethisterone, ethynodiol diacetate, norethindrone, norethindrone acetate, norethisterone, fluocinolone acetonide, flurandrenolone, flunisolide, hydrocortisone sodium succinate, methylprednisolone
- 25 sodium succinate, prednisolone phosphate sodium, triamcinolone acetonide, hydroxydione sodium, spironolactone, oxandrolone, oxymetholone, prometholone, testosterone cypionate, testosterone phenylacetate, estradiol cypionate, and norethynodrel.

*Vitamins*, include, for example, cyanocobalamin neinoic acid, retinoids and derivatives thereof such as retinol palmitate,  $\alpha$ -tocopherol, naphthoquinone, cholecalciferol, folic acid and tetrahydrofolate.

*Peptides and peptide analogs*, include, for example, manganese super oxide dismutase, tissue plasminogen activator (t-PA), glutathione, insulin, dopamine, peptide

- 29 -

ligands containing RGD, AGD, RGE, KGD, KGE or KQAGDV (Peptides with affinity for the GPIIBIIIa receptor), opiate peptides, enkephalins, endorphins and their analogs, human chorionic gonadotropin (HCG), corticotropin release factor (CRF), cholecystokinins and their analogs, bradykinins and their analogs and promoters and  
5 inhibitors, elastins, vasopressins, pepsins, glucagon, substance P, integrins, captopril, enalapril, lisinopril and other ACE inhibitors, adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), oxytocin, calcitonins, IgG or fragments thereof, IgA or fragments thereof, IgM or fragments thereof, ligands for Effector Cell Protease Receptors (all subtypes), thrombin, streptokinase, urokinase, t-PA and all active fragments or analogs, Protein Kinase C and  
10 its binding ligands, interferons ( $\alpha$ -interferon,  $\beta$ -interferon,  $\gamma$ -interferon), colony stimulating factors (CSF), granulocyte colony stimulating factors (GCSF), granulocyte-macrophage colony stimulating factors (GM-CSF), tumor necrosis factors (TNF), nerve growth factors (NGF), platelet derived growth factors, lymphotoxin, epidermal growth factors, fibroblast growth factors, vascular endothelial cell growth  
15 factors, erythropoietin, transforming growth factors, oncostatin M, interleukins (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11 and 12), metalloprotein kinase ligands, collagenases and agonists and antagonists.

*Enzymes*, include, for example, alkaline phosphatase, cyclooxygenase type I and agonists and antagonists.

20       *Anti-allergenic agents*, include, for example, arnelexanox.

*Anti-coagulation agents*, include, for example, phenprocoumon and heparin.

*Circulatory drugs*, include, for example, propranolol.

25       *Anti-tubercular agents*, include, for example, para-aminosalicylic acid, isoniazid, capreomycin sulfate cycloserine, ethambutol hydrochloride ethionamide, pyrazinamide, rifampin, and streptomycin sulfate.

*Anti-viral agents*, include, for example, acyclovir, amantadine azidothymidine (AZT or Zidovudine), ribavirin, and vidarabine monohydrate (adenine arabinoside, ara-A).

30       *Anti-anginal agents*, include, for example, diltiazem, nifedipine, verapamil, erythritol tetranitrate, isosorbide dinitrate, nitroglycerin (glyceryl trinitrate), and pentaerythritol tetranitrate.

- 30 -

*Antibiotics*, include, for example, dapsone, chloramphenicol, neomycin, cefaclor, cefadroxil, cephalexin, cephradine erythromycin, clindamycin, lincomycin, amoxicillin, ampicillin, bacampicillin, carbenicillin, dicloxacillin, cyclacillin, picloxacillin, hetacillin, methicillin, nafcillin, oxacillin, penicillin G, penicillin V, 5 ticarcillin, rifampin, and tetracycline.

*Anti-inflammatory agents and analgesics*, include, for example, diflunisal, ibuprofen, indomethacin, meclofenamate, mefenamic acid, naproxen, oxyphenbutazone, phenylbutazone, piroxicam, sulindac, tolmetin, aspirin and salicylates.

*Anti-protozoan agents*, include, for example, chloroquine, metronidazole, 10 hydroxychloroquine, quinine, and meglumine antimonate.

*Anti-rheumatic agents*, include, for example, penicillamine.

*Narcotics*, include, for example, paregoric and opiates, such as codeine, heroin, methadone, morphine and opium.

*Cardiac glycoside agents*, include, for example, deslanoside, digitoxin, digoxin, 15 digitalin and digitalis.

*Chelates*, include, for example, diethylene triamine pentaacetic acid (DTPA) and 1,4,7,10-tetraazocyclododecane-N',N',N'',N''-tetraacetic acid (DOTA). Any chelate that is generally used in conjunction with paramagnetic or radioactive metal ions may be used.

20 *Neuromuscular blocking agents*, include, for example, atracurium mesylate, gallamine triethiodide, hexafluorenium bromide, metocurine iodide, pancuronium bromide, succinylcholine chloride (suxamethonium chloride), tubocurarine chloride, and vecuronium bromide.

*Sedatives (hypnotics)*, include, for example, amobarbital, amobarbital sodium, 25 aprobarbital, butabarbital sodium, chloral hydrate, ethchlorvynol, ethinamate, flurazepam hydrochloride, glutethimide, methotrimeprazine hydrochloride, methyprylon, midazolam hydrochloride paraldehyde, pentobarbital, pentobarbital sodium, phenobarbital sodium, secobarbital sodium, talbutal, temazepam, and triazolam.

30 *Local anesthetic agents*, include, for example, bupivacaine hydrochloride, chloroprocaine hydrochloride, etidocaine hydrochloride, lidocaine hydrochloride, mepivacaine hydrochloride, procaine hydrochloride, and tetracaine hydrochloride.

- 31 -

*General anesthetic agents*, include, for example, droperidol, etomidate, fentanyl citrate with droperidol, ketamine hydrochloride, methohexitol sodium, and thiopental sodium.

*Radioactive particles or radioactive ions*, include, for example, strontium, 5 rhenium, yttrium, technetium, and cobalt.

*X-ray contrast agents*, include, for example, X-ray contrast agents known in the art that contain heavy metals such as yttrium, ytterbium, lanthanides in chelates or other iodinated materials, such as iothalamate.

*Genetic materials*, include, for example, nucleic acids, RNA and DNA, of 10 either natural or synthetic origin, including recombinant RNA and DNA and antisense RNA and DNA; hammerhead RNA, ribozymes, antogene nucleic acids, both single and double stranded RNA and DNA and analogs thereof.

Preferably, the bioactive agent is an antineoplastic agent, a hormone, a steroid, 15 an anti-fungal agent, a peptide or a peptide analog. More preferably, the bioactive agent is dexamethasone, amphotericin B, adriamycin, mitomycin c, taxol or tissue plasminogen activator (t-PA).

The bioactive agents used in the prodrugs of the present invention are preferably highly active in low concentrations. The targeting aspects of the invention further enable lowered dosages to be applied for therapy, since the effective concentration at 20 the therapeutic site remains undiluted in the body. The amount of prodrug of the present invention to be administered to a patient depends, for example, on the particular bioactive agent that is used, the method in which the prodrug is being administered, and the age, sex, weight and physical condition of the patient. Generally, treatment is initiated with small dosages, which can then be increased by small increments, until the 25 desired effect under the circumstances is achieved. Additionally, one skilled in the art may rely on reference materials, such as the *Physician's Desk Reference*, published by Medical Economics Company at Montvale, NJ 07645-1742, to determine the appropriate amount of a particular bioactive agent, and hence the corresponding prodrug of the invention that may be administered to a patient. In accordance with the present 30 invention, the prodrug is delivered to the patient (e.g., in a region of the patient) for the purposes, for example, of treating a condition (i.e., a disease state, malady, disorder, etc.) in the patient.

The prodrugs may be used as above or may be incorporated into other embodiments, such as emulsions and/or formulated with gas bubbles, and are preferably associated with an acoustically active matrix, where the matrix is comprised, for example, of gases and/or gaseous precursors. In a preferred embodiment of the invention, the prodrugs are incorporated with and/or into wall-forming or stabilizing materials surrounded or accompanied by microbubbles, gaseous precursors or other materials, including liquids such as perfluorodecalin.

In view of the present disclosure, and with knowledge of basic synthetic organic chemistry, one skilled in the art would readily recognize the locations on any particular bioactive agent, linking group and fluorinated amphiphilic moiety where attachments may be made to covalently attach the bioactive agent to the linking group and to attach the linking group to the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety (when p is 1 in the compound of formula (I)) or, alternatively, to covalently attach the bioactive agent to the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety (when p is 0 in the compound of formula (I)). For example, -OH, -COOH, -NH or -SH groups which are present on a bioactive agent, a linking group or a fluorinated amphiphilic moiety are obvious points at which the bioactive agent, linking group and fluorinated amphiphilic moiety may be attached to each other. Bioactive agents generally have -OH, -COOH, -NH or -SH terminal groups at one or more locations, any of which may serve as the point of attachment to the linking group or bioactive agent. If the bioactive agent, linking group or fluorinated amphiphilic moiety does not have a -OH, -COOH, -NH or -SH terminal group, basic synthetic addition chemistry, which is well known to one skilled in the art, can be used to introduce an -OH group into the compound, which would then serve as a suitable point of attachment.

General schemes for synthesizing prodrugs of the invention are shown below. One skilled in the art will readily appreciate that certain modifications may be necessary, depending on the presence or absence of labile groups on the underivatized bioactive agents. As discussed above, the modifications may take the form, for example, of adding protecting or blocking groups to chemically reactive side groups or additions of reactive -COOH, -OH, -NH<sub>2</sub> or -SH groups for coupling.

Preliminarily, the fluorinated amphiphilic compounds are purified by dissolving in an appropriate organic solvent and heating in the presence of a small amount of activated

- 33 -

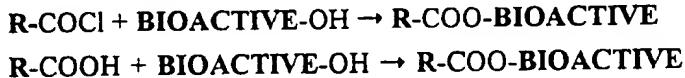
charcoal. The solvents are then removed via vacuum evaporation. Appropriate organic solvents include, for example, ethyl acetate, acetonitrile, tetrahydrofuran, dichloroethane, acetone, toluene, methylene chloride or an alcohol having about 5 carbon atoms or less. If necessary to provide a reactive end, the fluorinated amphiphiles may then be exposed to an activating agent. Details of the various activations and coupling reactions are given by the following general schemes:

In all cases below, "R" designates a fluorinated amphiphilic moiety, including, for example, one or more of those of formulas (II), (III), (IV), (V), (VI), (VII) and/or (VIII) described herein. "BIOACTIVE" designates any suitable bioactive agent, including those disclosed herein. The linkage between the R group and the BIOACTIVE agent may be a linking group "X" as defined herein (e.g., a compound of formula (I) where p is 1) or may be a reactive moiety on the bioactive agent (e.g., a compound of formula (I) where p is 0).

Amide linked prodrugs



Ester linked prodrugs



20            Anhydride linked prodrugs



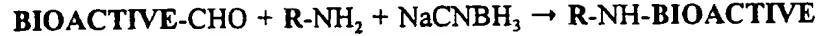
Disulfide linked prodrugs



SONH<sub>2</sub> linked prodrugs



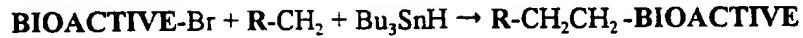
Amino linked prodrugs



Thio linked prodrugs

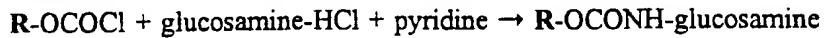


30            Alkyl linked prodrugs



Further details of experimental conditions and variations in the above schemes are given in the Examples and would be apparent to one skilled in the art in view of the present disclosure.

- Alternatively, it is often useful to conjugate the bioactive agent through a modified sugar, such as glucosamine, or sugar acid derivative, such as succinate. An example of the synthesis of the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety attached to glucosamine can be generalized as follows:



- As one skilled in the art will recognize, the glucosamine derivative is then available for reaction with the bioactive agent through either an amine group or a -OH group.

In the present invention, the prodrugs may be used by themselves, but are preferably used with a delivery vehicle, such as a stabilizing material or vesicle, because, for example, the delivery vehicle may help to solubilize or stabilize the prodrug. Since the prodrugs may be less soluble in aqueous media than the parent compounds, the use of delivery vehicles may be helpful in this regard.

A wide variety of lipids may be used as stabilizing materials and vesicles, for example, micelles and/or liposomes, and any of the materials or combinations thereof which are known to one skilled in the art are suitable for their preparation. The lipids may be of either natural, synthetic or semi-synthetic origin, including for example, fatty acids, fluorinated lipids, neutral fats, phosphatides, oils, glycolipids, surface-active agents (surfactants and fluorosurfactants), aliphatic alcohols, waxes, terpenes and steroids.

Exemplary lipids which may be used to prepare the stabilizing materials of the present invention include, for example, fatty acids, lysolipids, fluorinated lipids, phosphocholines, such as those associated with platelet activation factors (PAF) (Avanti Polar Lipids, Alabaster, AL), including 1-alkyl-2-acetoyl-sn-glycero 3-phosphocholines, and 1-alkyl-2-hydroxy-sn-glycero 3-phosphocholines, which target blood clots; phosphatidylcholine with both saturated and unsaturated lipids, including dioleoylphosphatidylcholine; dimyristoylphosphatidylcholine; dipentadecanoylphosphatidylcholine; dilauroylphosphatidylcholine; dipalmitoylphosphatidylcholine (DPPC); distearoyl-phosphatidylcholine (DSPC); and

diarachidonylphosphatidylcholine (DAPC); phosphatidylethanolamines, such as dioleoylphosphatidylethanolamine, dipalmitoyl-phosphatidylethanolamine (DPPE) and distearoylphosphatidylethanolamine (DSPE); phosphatidylserine; phosphatidylglycerols, including distearoylphosphatidylglycerol (DSPG); phosphatidylinositol; sphingolipids such as sphingomyelin; glycolipids such as ganglioside GM1 and GM2; glucolipids; sulfatides; glycosphingolipids; phosphatidic acids, such as dipalmitoylphosphatidic acid (DPPA) and distearoylphosphatidic acid (DSPA); palmitic acid; stearic acid; arachidonic acid; oleic acid; lipids bearing polymers, such as chitin, hyaluronic acid, polyvinylpyrrolidone or polyethylene glycol (PEG), also referred to herein as "pegylated lipids" with preferred lipid bearing polymers including DPPE-PEG (DPPE-PEG), which refers to the lipid DPPE having a PEG polymer attached thereto, including, for example, DPPE-PEG5000, which refers to DPPE having attached thereto a PEG polymer having a mean average molecular weight of about 5000; lipids bearing sulfonated mono-, di-, oligo- or polysaccharides; cholesterol, cholesterol sulfate and cholesterol hemisuccinate; tocopherol hemisuccinate; lipids with ether and ester-linked fatty acids; polymerized lipids (a wide variety of which are well known in the art); diacetyl phosphate; dicetyl phosphate; stearylamine; cardiolipin; phospholipids with short chain fatty acids of about 6 to about 8 carbons in length; synthetic phospholipids with asymmetric acyl chains, such as, for example, one acyl chain of about 6 carbons and another acyl chain of about 12 carbons; ceramides; non-ionic liposomes including niosomes such as polyoxyalkylene (e.g., polyoxyethylene) fatty acid esters, polyoxyalkylene (e.g., polyoxyethylene) fatty alcohols, polyoxyalkylene (e.g., polyoxyethylene) fatty alcohol ethers, polyoxyalkylene (e.g., polyoxyethylene) sorbitan fatty acid esters (such as, for example, the class of compounds referred to as TWEEN®, including, for example, TWEEN® 20, TWEEN® 40 and TWEEN® 80, commercially available from ICI Americas, Inc., Wilmington, DE), glycerol polyethylene glycol oxystearate, glycerol polyethylene glycol ricinoleate, alkyloxyLATED (e.g., ethoxylated) soybean sterols, alkyloxyLATED (e.g., ethoxylated) castor oil, polyoxyethylene-polyoxypropylene polymers, and polyoxyalkylene (e.g., polyoxyethylene) fatty acid stearates; sterol aliphatic acid esters including cholesterol sulfate, cholesterol butyrate, cholesterol isobutyrate, cholesterol palmitate, cholesterol stearate, lanosterol acetate, ergosterol palmitate, and phytosterol n-butyrate; sterol esters of sugar acids including

- 36 -

- cholesterol glucuronide, lanosterol glucuronide, 7-dehydrocholesterol glucuronide, ergosterol glucuronide, cholesterol gluconate, lanosterol gluconate, and ergosterol gluconate; esters of sugar acids and alcohols including lauryl glucuronide, stearoyl glucuronide, myristoyl glucuronide, lauryl gluconate, myristoyl gluconate, and stearoyl 5 gluconate; esters of sugars and aliphatic acids including sucrose laurate, fructose laurate, sucrose palmitate, sucrose stearate, glucuronic acid, gluconic acid and polyuronic acid; saponins including sarsasapogenin, smilagenin, hederagenin, oleanolic acid, and digitoxigenin; glycerol dilaurate, glycerol trilaurate, glycerol dipalmitate, glycerol and glycerol esters including glycerol tripalmitate, glycerol distearate, glycerol tristearate, 10 glycerol dimyristate, glycerol trimyristate; long chain alcohols including n-decyl alcohol, lauryl alcohol, myristyl alcohol, cetyl alcohol, and n-octadecyl alcohol; 6-(5-cholest-3 $\beta$ -yloxy)-1-thio- $\beta$ -D-galactopyranoside; digalactosyldiglyceride; 6-(5-cholest-3 $\beta$ -yloxy)-hexyl-6-amino-6-deoxy-1-thio- $\beta$ -D-galactopyranoside; 6-(5-cholest-3 $\beta$ -yloxy)hexyl-6-amino-6-deoxyl-1-thio- $\alpha$ -D-mannopyranoside; 12-(((7'-diethylamino-coumarin-3-yl)- 15 carbonyl)methylamino)octadecanoic acid; N-[12-(((7'-diethylamino-coumarin-3-yl)- carbonyl)methylamino)octadecanoyl]-2-aminopalmitic acid; cholesteryl(4'-trimethyl- ammonio)butanoate; N-succinyldioleoylphosphatidylethanolamine; 1,2-dioleoyl-sn- glycerol; 1,2-dipalmitoyl-sn-3-succinylglycerol; 1,3-dipalmitoyl-2-succinylglycerol; 1- hexadecyl-2-palmitoylglycerophosphoethanolamine and palmitoylhomocysteine, and/or 20 any combinations thereof. In preferred embodiments, the stabilizing materials comprise phospholipids, including one or more of DPPC, DPPE, DPPA, DSPC, DSPE, DSPG, and DAPC.

Examples of suitable fluorinated lipids include but are not limited to compounds of the formula:

- 25  $C_nF_{2n+1}(CH_2)_mC(O)OOP(OO^-)O(CH_2)_wN^+(CH_3)_3C_nF_{2n+1}(CH_2)_mC(O)O$   
 wherein m is 0 to about 18, n is 1 to about 12; and w is 1 to about 8. Examples of and methods for the synthesis of these, as well as other fluorinated lipids useful in the present invention, are set forth in U.S. application Serial No. 08/465,868, filed June 6, 1995, Reiss et al. U.S. Patent No. 5,344,930, Frezard, F., et al., *Biochem Biophys Acta*, 1192:61-70 (1994), and Frezard, F., et al., *Art. Cells Blood Subs and Immob Biotech.*, 22:1403-1408 30 (1994), the disclosures of each of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. One specific example of a difluoroacyl glycerylphosphatidyl-choline,

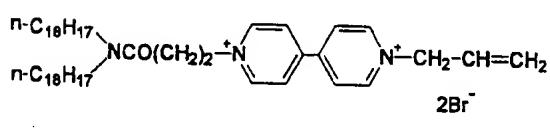
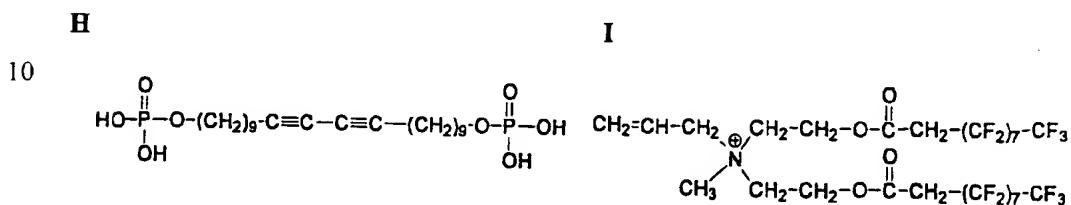
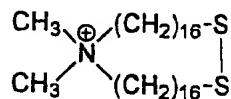
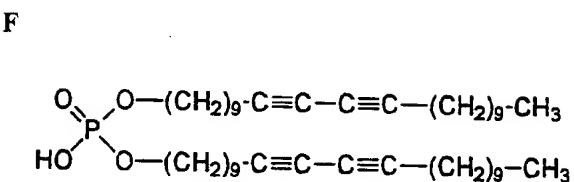
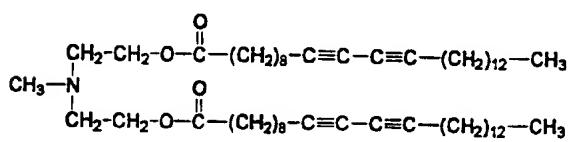
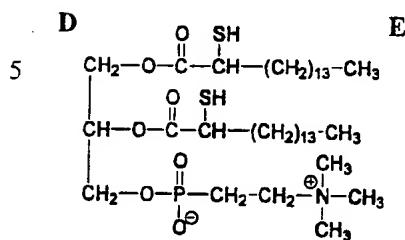
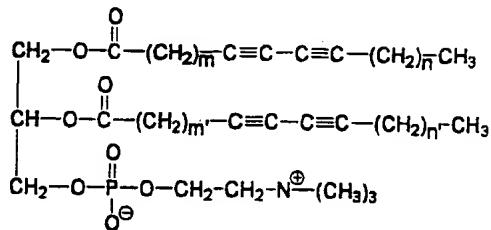
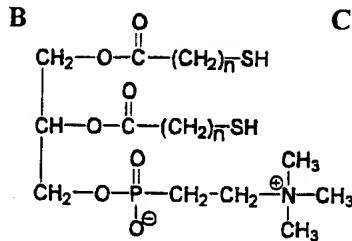
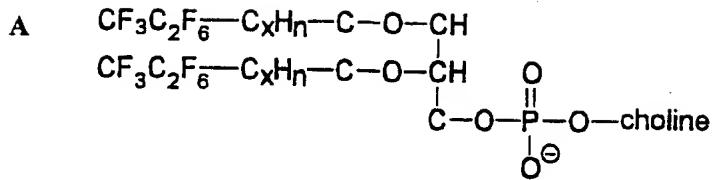
- 37 -

nonafluorinated diacyl glycerylphosphatidylcholine, is represented by compound A, below. One skilled in the art will appreciate that analogous fluorinated derivatives of other common phospholipids (diacylphosphatidyl serine, diacylphosphatidyl ethanolamine, diacylphosphatidyl glycerol, diacylphosphatidyl glycerol, etc.) as well as 5 fluorinated derivatives of fatty acyl esters and free fatty acids may also function in accordance with the scope of the invention. Additionally lipid based and fluorinated (including perfluorinated) surfactants may be used as stabilizing materials in the present invention.

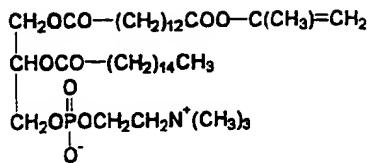
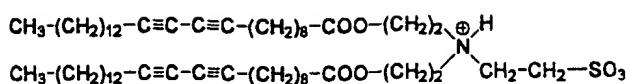
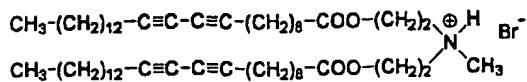
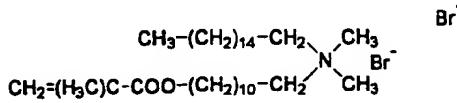
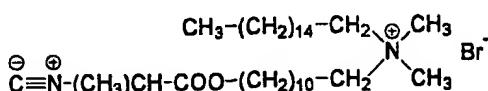
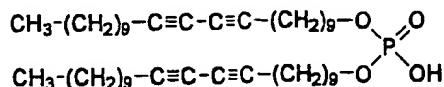
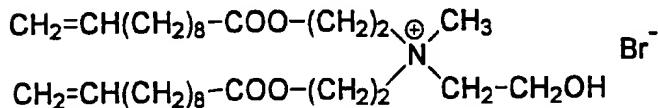
Examples of polymerized lipids include unsaturated lipophilic chains such as 10 alkenyl or alkynyl, containing up to about 50 carbon atoms. Further examples are phospholipids such as phosphoglycerides and sphingolipids carrying polymerizable groups; and saturated and unsaturated fatty acid derivatives with hydroxyl groups, such as for example triglycerides of d-12-hydroxyoleic acid, including castor oil and ergot oil. Polymerization may be designed to include hydrophilic substituents such as carboxyl or 15 hydroxyl groups, to enhance dispersability so that the backbone residue resulting from biodegradation is water soluble. Suitable polymerizable lipids are also described, for example, by Klaveness et al, U.S. Patent No. 5,536,490, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference herein in its entirety.

Exemplary polymerizable and/or fluorinated lipid compounds which may be 20 utilized in the compositions of the present invention are illustrated below.

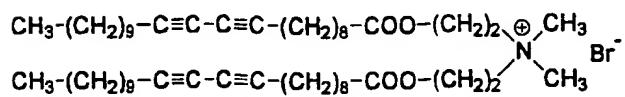
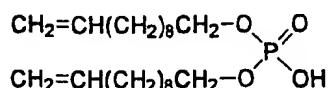
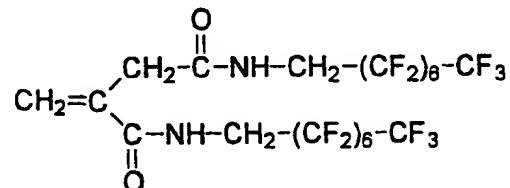
- 38 -



- 39 -

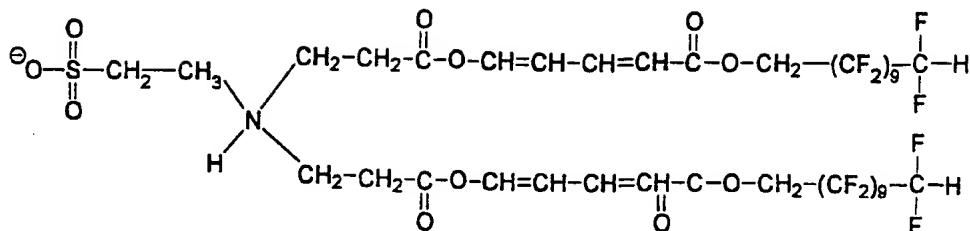
**L****M****N****O**5   **P****Q****R****S**

10

**T****U**

- 40 -

V



In formula A, above, x is an integer from about 8 to about 18, and n is 2x. Most preferably x is 12 and n is 24. In formulas B, C, K and L, above, m, n, m' and n' are, independently, 5 an integer of from about 8 to about 18, preferably about 10 to about 14.

If desired, the stabilizing material may comprise a cationic lipid, such as, for example, N-[1-(2,3-dioleyloxy)propyl]-N,N,N-trimethylammonium chloride (DOTMA), 1,2-dioleyloxy-3-(trimethylammonio)propane (DOTAP); and 1,2-dioleoyl-3-(4'-trimethyl-ammonio)butanoyl-sn-glycerol (DOTB). If a cationic lipid is employed in 10 the stabilizing materials, the molar ratio of cationic lipid to non-cationic lipid may be, for example, from about 1:1000 to about 1:100. Preferably, the molar ratio of cationic lipid to non-cationic lipid may be from about 1:2 to about 1:10, with a ratio of from about 1:1 to about 1:2.5 being preferred. Even more preferably, the molar ratio of cationic lipid to non-cationic lipid may be about 1:1.

15 If desired, aggregates may be constructed of one or more charged lipids in association with one or more polymer bearing lipids, optionally in association with one or more neutral lipids. The charged lipids may either be anionic or cationic. Typically, the lipids are aggregated in the presence of a multivalent species, such as a counter ion, opposite in charge to the charged lipid. For delivery of prodrugs and/or bioactive agents 20 to selective sites *in vivo*, aggregates of preferably under 2  $\mu$ m, more preferably under 0.5  $\mu$ m, and even more preferably under 200 nm are desired. Most preferably the lipid aggregates are under 200 nm in size and may be as small as 5-10 nm in size.

Exemplary anionic lipids include phosphatidic acid and phosphatidyl glycerol and fatty acid esters thereof, amides of phosphatidyl ethanolamine such as 25 anandamides and methanandamides, phosphatidyl serine, phosphatidyl inositol and fatty acid esters thereof, cardiolipin, phosphatidyl ethylene glycol, acidic lysolipids, sulfolipids, and sulfatides, free fatty acids, both saturated and unsaturated, and negatively charged

- 41 -

derivatives thereof. Phosphatidic acid and phosphatidyl glycerol and fatty acid esters thereof are preferred anionic lipids.

When the charged lipid is anionic, a multivalent (divalent, trivalent, etc.) cationic material may be used to form aggregates. Useful cations include, for example,

5      cations derived from alkaline earth metals, such as beryllium ( $\text{Be}^{+2}$ ), magnesium ( $\text{Mg}^{+2}$ ), calcium ( $\text{Ca}^{+2}$ ), strontium ( $\text{Sr}^{+2}$ ), and barium ( $\text{Ba}^{+2}$ ); amphoteric ions such as aluminum ( $\text{Al}^{+3}$ ), gallium ( $\text{Ga}^{+3}$ ), germanium ( $\text{Ge}^{+3}$ ), tin ( $\text{Sn}^{+4}$ ), and lead ( $\text{Pb}^{+2}$  and  $\text{Pb}^{+4}$ ); transition metals such as titanium ( $\text{Ti}^{+3}$  and  $\text{Ti}^{+4}$ ), vanadium ( $\text{V}^{+2}$  and  $\text{V}^{+3}$ ), chromium ( $\text{Cr}^{+2}$  and  $\text{Cr}^{+3}$ ), manganese ( $\text{Mn}^{+2}$  and  $\text{Mn}^{+3}$ ), iron ( $\text{Fe}^{+2}$  and  $\text{Fe}^{+3}$ ), cobalt ( $\text{Co}^{+2}$  and  $\text{Co}^{+3}$ ), nickel ( $\text{Ni}^{+2}$  and  $\text{Ni}^{+3}$ ), copper ( $\text{Cu}^{+2}$ ), zinc ( $\text{Zn}^{+2}$ ), zirconium ( $\text{Zr}^{+4}$ ), niobium ( $\text{Nb}^{+3}$ ), molybdenum ( $\text{Mo}^{+2}$  and  $\text{Mo}^{+3}$ ), cadmium ( $\text{Cd}^{+2}$ ), indium ( $\text{In}^{+3}$ ), tungsten ( $\text{W}^{+2}$  and  $\text{W}^{+4}$ ), osmium ( $\text{Os}^{+2}$ ,  $\text{Os}^{+3}$  and  $\text{Os}^{+4}$ ), iridium ( $\text{Ir}^{+2}$ ,  $\text{Ir}^{+3}$  and  $\text{Ir}^{+4}$ ), mercury ( $\text{Hg}^{+2}$ ), and bismuth ( $\text{Bi}^{+3}$ ); and rare earth lanthanides, such as lanthanum ( $\text{La}^{+3}$ ), and gadolinium ( $\text{Gd}^{+3}$ ). It is contemplated that cations in all of their ordinary valence states will be suitable for forming aggregates and cross-linked lipids. Preferred cations include calcium ( $\text{Ca}^{+2}$ ), magnesium ( $\text{Mg}^{+2}$ ), and zinc ( $\text{Zn}^{+2}$ ) and paramagnetic cations such as manganese (preferably  $\text{Mn}^{+2}$ ) and gadolinium ( $\text{Gd}^{+3}$ ). Particularly preferred is calcium ( $\text{Ca}^{+2}$ ). As will be apparent to one skilled in the art, some of the above ions (notably lead and nickel) may have associated toxicity and thus may be inappropriate for *in vivo* use.

15

10

15

20

When the charged lipid is cationic, an anionic material, for example, may be used to form aggregates. Preferably, the anionic material is multivalent, such as, for example, divalent. Examples of useful anionic materials include monatomic and polyatomic anions such as carboxylate ions, sulfide ion, sulfite ions, sulfate ions, oxide ions, nitride ions, carbonate ions, and phosphate ions. Anions of ethylene diamine tetraacetic acid (EDTA), diethylene triamine pentaacetic acid (DTPA), and 1, 4, 7, 10-tetraazacyclododecane-N', N', N'', N'''-tetraacetic acid (DOTA) may also be used. Further examples of useful anionic materials include anions of polymers and copolymers of acrylic acid, methacrylic acid, other polyacrylates and methacrylates, polymers with pendant  $\text{SO}_3\text{H}$  groups, such as sulfonated polystyrene, and polystyrenes containing carboxylic acid groups.

25

30

Examples of cationic lipids include those listed hereinabove. A preferred cationic lipid for formation of aggregates is N-[1-(2,3-dioleyloxy)propyl]-N,N,N-

- 42 -

trimethylammonium chloride ("DOTMA"). Synthetic cationic lipids may also be used. These include common natural lipids derivatized to contain one or more basic functional groups. Examples of lipids which can be so modified include dimethyldioctadecylammonium bromide, sphingolipids, sphingomyelin, lysolipids, glycolipids such as 5 ganglioside GM1, sulfatides, glycosphingolipids, cholesterol and cholesterol esters and salts, N-succinyloleoylphosphatidylethanolamine, 1,2-dioleoyl-sn-glycerol, 1,3-dipalmitoyl-2-succinylglycerol, 1,2-dipalmitoyl-sn-3-succinylglycerol, 1-hexadecyl-2-palmitoylglycero-phosphatidylethanolamine and palmitoylhomocystiene.

Specially synthesized cationic lipids also function in the embodiments of 10 the invention. Among these are those disclosed in pending U.S. Patent Application No. 08/391,938, filed February 21, 1995, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety, and include, for example, N,N'-bis (dodecyaminocarbonylmethylene)-N,N'-bis ( $\beta$ -N,N,N-trimethylammoniummethylaminocarbonylmethyleneethylene-diamine tetraiodide; N,N'-bis 15 hexadecylaminocarbonylmethylene)-N,N',N'-tris ( $\beta$ -N,N,N-trimethylammoniummethylaminocarbonylmethylenediethylenetriamine hexaiodide; N,N'-Bis(dodecyaminocarbonylmethylene)-N,N'-bis( $\beta$ -N,N,N-trimethylammoniummethylamino-carbonylmethylene)cyclohexylene-1,4-diamine tetraiodide; 1,1,7,7-tetra-( $\beta$ -N,N,N,N-tetramethylammoniummethylaminocarbonylmethylene)-3-hexadecylaminocarbonylmethylene-1,3,7-triaazaheptane heptaiodide; and N,N,N'N'-tetraphosphoethanolamino-carbonylmethylene)diethylenetriamine tetraiodide.

In the case of stabilizing materials which contain both cationic and non-cationic lipids, a wide variety of lipids, as described above, may be employed as the non-cationic lipid. Preferably, the non-cationic lipid comprises one or more of DPPC, DPPE 25 and dioleoylphosphatidylethanolamine. In lieu of the cationic lipids listed above, lipids bearing cationic polymers, such as polylysine or polyarginine, as well as alkyl phosphonates, alkyl phosphinates, and alkyl phosphites, may also be used in the stabilizing materials. Other cationic lipid compounds which may be used in the present invention are 30 set forth in copending U.S. Application Serial No. 08/391,938, filed February 21, 1995, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

- 43 -

Saturated and unsaturated fatty acids which may be employed in the present stabilizing materials include molecules that preferably contain from about 12 carbon atoms to about 22 carbon atoms, in linear or branched form. Hydrocarbon groups consisting of isoprenoid units and/or prenyl groups can be used. Examples of suitable saturated fatty acids include, for example, lauric, myristic, palmitic, and stearic acids. Examples of suitable unsaturated fatty acids include, for example, lauroleic, phytanic, myristoleic, palmitoleic, petroselinic, and oleic acids. Examples of suitable branched fatty acids include, for example, isolauric, isomyristic, isopalmitic, and isostearic acids.

Other useful lipids or combinations thereof apparent to one skilled in the art which are in keeping with the spirit of the present invention are also encompassed by the present invention. For example, carbohydrate-bearing lipids may be employed, as described in U.S. Patent No. 4,310,505, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

In addition to stabilizing materials and/or vesicles formulated from lipids, embodiments of the present invention may involve stabilizing materials or vesicles formulated, in whole or in part, from proteins or derivatives thereof. Suitable proteins for use in the present invention include, for example, albumin, hemoglobin,  $\alpha$ -1-antitrypsin,  $\alpha$ -fetoprotein, aminotransferases, amylase, C-reactive protein, carcinoembryonic antigen, ceruloplasmin, complement, creatine phosphokinase, ferritin, fibrinogen, fibrin, transpeptidase, gastrin, serum globulins, myoglobin, immunoglobulins, lactate dehydrogenase, lipase, lipoproteins, acid phosphatase, alkaline phosphatase,  $\alpha$ -1-serum protein fraction,  $\alpha$ -2-serum protein fraction,  $\beta$ -protein fraction,  $\gamma$ -protein fraction and  $\gamma$ -glutamyl transferase. Other stabilizing materials and vesicles formulated from proteins that may be used in the present invention are described, for example, in U.S. Patent Nos. 4,572,203, 4,718,433, 4,774,958, and 4,957,656, the disclosures of each of which are hereby incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. Other protein-based stabilizing materials and vesicles, in addition to those described above and in the aforementioned patents, would be apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art, in view of the present disclosure.

In addition to stabilizing materials and/or vesicles formulated from lipids and/or proteins, embodiments of the present invention may also involve stabilizing materials or

- vesicles formulated from polymers which may be of natural, semi-synthetic (modified natural) or synthetic origin. Polymer denotes a compound comprised of two or more repeating monomeric units, and preferably 10 or more repeating monomeric units.
- Semi-synthetic polymer (or modified natural polymer) denotes a natural polymer that
- 5 has been chemically modified in some fashion. Examples of suitable natural polymers include naturally occurring polysaccharides, such as, for example, arabinans, fructans, fucans, galactans, galacturonans, glucans, mannans, xylans (such as, for example, inulin), levan, fucoidan, carrageenan, galatocarolose, pectic acid, pectins, including amylose, pullulan, glycogen, amylopectin, cellulose, dextran, dextrin, dextrose, glucose,
- 10 polyglucose, polydextrose, pustulan, chitin, agarose, keratin, chondroitin, dermatan, hyaluronic acid, alginic acid, xanthin gum, starch and various other natural homopolymer or heteropolymers, such as those containing one or more of the following aldoses, ketoses, acids or amines: erythrose, threose, ribose, arabinose, xylose, lyxose, allose, altrose, glucose, dextrose, mannose, gulose, idose, galactose, talose, erythrulose,
- 15 ribulose, xylulose, psicose, fructose, sorbose, tagatose, mannitol, sorbitol, lactose, sucrose, trehalose, maltose, cellobiose, glycine, serine, threonine, cysteine, tyrosine, asparagine, glutamine, aspartic acid, glutamic acid, lysine, arginine, histidine, glucuronic acid, gluconic acid, glucaric acid, galacturonic acid, mannuronic acid, glucosamine, galactosamine, and neuraminic acid, and naturally occurring derivatives thereof.
- 20 Accordingly, suitable polymers include, for example, proteins, such as albumin or polylactide-coglycolide polymers, and polyalginates. Exemplary semi-synthetic polymers include carboxymethylcellulose, hydroxymethyl-cellulose, hydroxypropylmethylcellulose, methylcellulose, and methoxycellulose. Exemplary synthetic polymers suitable for use in the present invention include polyphosphazenes,
- 25 hydroxyapatite polymers, fluoroapatite polymers, polyethylenes (such as, for example, polyethylene glycol (including, for example, the class of compounds referred to as Pluronics®, commercially available from BASF, Parsippany, NJ), polyoxyethylene, and polyethylene terephthalate), polypropylenes (such as, for example, polypropylene glycol), polyurethanes (such as, for example, polyvinyl alcohol (PVA), polyvinyl chloride and
- 30 polyvinylpyrrolidone), polyamides including nylon, polystyrene, polylactic acids, fluorinated hydrocarbon polymers, fluorinated carbon polymers (such as, for example, polytetrafluoroethylene), acrylate, methacrylate, and polymethylmethacrylate, and

- 45 -

derivatives thereof. Preferred are synthetic polymers or copolymers prepared from monomers, such as acrylic acid, methacrylic acid, ethyleneimine, crotonic acid, acrylamide, ethyl acrylate, methyl methacrylate, 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate (HEMA), lactic acid, glycolic acid,  $\epsilon$ -caprolactone, acrolein, cyanoacrylate, bisphenol A,

5 epichlorhydrin, hydroxyalkyl-acrylates, siloxane, dimethylsiloxane, ethylene oxide, ethylene glycol, hydroxyalkyl-methacrylates, N-substituted acrylamides, N-substituted methacrylamides, N-vinyl-2-pyrrolidone, 2,4-pentadiene-1-ol, vinyl acetate, acrylonitrile, styrene, p-amino-styrene, p-amino-benzyl-styrene, sodium styrene sulfonate, sodium 2-sulfoxyethyl-methacrylate, vinyl pyridine, aminoethyl methacrylates, 2-methacryloyloxy-

10 trimethylammonium chloride, and polyvinylidene, as well polyfunctional crosslinking monomers such as N,N'-methylenebisacrylamide, ethylene glycol dimethacrylates, 2,2'-(p-phenylenedioxy)-diethyl dimethacrylate, divinylbenzene, triallylamine and methylenebis-(4-phenylisocyanate), including combinations thereof. Preferable polymers include polyacrylic acid, polyethyleneimine, polymethacrylic acid,

15 polymethylmethacrylate, polysiloxane, polydimethylsiloxane, polylactic acid, poly( $\epsilon$ -caprolactone), epoxy resin, poly(ethylene oxide), poly(ethylene glycol), and polyamide (nylon) polymers. Preferable copolymers include the following: polyvinylidene-polyacrylonitrile, polyvinylidene-polyacrylonitrile-polymethylmethacrylate, polystyrene-polyacrylonitrile and poly d-1, lactide co-glycolide polymers. A preferred copolymer is

20 polyvinylidene-polyacrylonitrile. Other suitable biocompatible monomers and polymers will be apparent to one skilled in the art in view of the present disclosure.

Stabilizing materials and vesicles may be prepared from other materials. The materials may be basic and fundamental, and may form the primary basis for creating or establishing the stabilized materials, such as gas and gaseous precursor filled vesicles. For example,

25 surfactants and fluorosurfactants may be basic and fundamental materials for preparing stabilizing materials and vesicles. On the other hand, the materials may be auxiliary, and act as subsidiary or supplementary agents which may enhance the functioning of the basic stabilizing material(s), or contribute some desired property in addition to that afforded by the basic stabilizing material(s).

30 It is not always possible to determine whether a given material is a basic or an auxiliary agent, since the functioning of the material is determined empirically, for example, by the results produced with respect to producing stabilized materials or vesicles. As an example

of how the basic and auxiliary materials may function, it has been observed that the simple combination of a biocompatible lipid and water or saline when shaken will often give a cloudy solution subsequent to autoclaving for sterilization. Such a cloudy solution may function as a contrast agent, but is aesthetically objectionable and may imply instability in  
5 the form of undissolved or undispersed lipid particles. Cloudy solutions may also be undesirable where the undissolved particulate matter has a diameter of greater than about 7 µm, and especially greater than about 10 µm. Manufacturing steps, such as sterile filtration, may also be problematic with solutions which contain undissolved particulate matter. Thus, propylene glycol may be added to remove this cloudiness by facilitating  
10 dispersion or dissolution of the lipid particles. Propylene glycol may also function as a wetting agent which can improve vesicle formation and stabilization by increasing the surface tension on the vesicle membrane or skin. It is possible that propylene glycol can also function as an additional layer that may coat the membrane or skin of the vesicle, thus providing additional stabilization. The conventional surfactants described by D'Arrigo,  
15 U.S. Patent Nos. 4,684,479 and 5,215,680, the disclosures of each of which are hereby incorporated by reference herein in their entirety, may be used as basic or auxiliary stabilizing materials in the present invention.

Additionally, oils and fluorinated oils are auxiliary and basic stabilizing materials that may be used in the present invention. Suitable oils include, for example, soybean oil,  
20 peanut oil, canola oil, olive oil, safflower oil, corn oil, almond oil, cottonseed oil, ethyl oleate, isopropyl myristate, isopropyl palmitate, mineral oil, myristyl alcohol, octyldodecanol, persic oil, sesame oil, squalene, myristyl oleate, cetyl oleate, myristyl palmitate, or any other oil commonly known to be ingestible which is suitable for use as a stabilizing compound in accordance with the teachings herein. The oils described herein  
25 may be fluorinated, such as triolein with a fluorine ( $F_2$ ) gas. A "fluorinated oil" refers to an oil in which at least one hydrogen atom of the oil is replaced with a fluorine atom. Preferably, at least two or more of the hydrogen atoms in the oil are replaced with fluorine atoms. Other suitable fluorinated oils are described, for example, in U.S. Patent No. 5,344,930, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference herein in its  
30 entirety. Optionally, any of the oils described herein may be used in a composition with the prodrug or added to the stabilizing material in order to dissolve the prodrug.

Additional auxiliary and basic stabilizing materials which may be used in the present invention are described, for example, in U.S. Application Serial No. 08/444,754, filed May 15, 1995, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Compounds used to make mixed micelle systems may be used as basic or auxiliary stabilizing materials, and include, for example, lauryltrimethylammonium bromide (dodecyl-), cetyltrimethylammonium bromide (hexadecyl-), myristyltrimethylammonium bromide (tetradecyl-), alkyldimethylbenzylammonium chloride (where alkyl is C<sub>12</sub>, C<sub>14</sub> or C<sub>16</sub>), benzylidimethyldodecylammonium bromide/chloride, benzylidimethyl hexadecyl-ammonium bromide/chloride, benzylidimethyl tetradecylammonium bromide/chloride, cetylidimethylethylammonium bromide/chloride, or cetylpyridinium bromide/chloride.

It may be possible to enhance the stability of stabilizing materials or vesicles by incorporating in the stabilizing materials and/or vesicles at least a minor amount, for example, about 1 to about 10 mole percent, based on the total amount of lipid employed, of a negatively charged lipid. Suitable negatively charged lipids include, for example, phosphatidylserine, phosphatidic acid, and fatty acids. Without intending to be bound by any theory or theories of operation, it is contemplated that such negatively charged lipids provide added stability by counteracting the tendency of vesicles to rupture by fusing together. Thus, the negatively charged lipids may act to establish a uniform negatively charged layer on the outer surface of the vesicle, which will be repulsed by a similarly charged outer layer on other vesicles which are proximate thereto. In this way, the vesicles may be less prone to come into touching proximity with each other, which may lead to a rupture of the membrane or skin of the respective vesicles and consolidation of the contacting vesicles into a single, larger vesicle. A continuation of this process of consolidation will, of course, lead to significant degradation of the vesicles.

The lipids used, especially in connection with vesicles, are preferably flexible. This means, in the context of the present invention, that the vesicles can alter their shape, for example, to pass through an opening having a diameter that is smaller than the diameter of the vesicle.

In preferred embodiments, the stabilizing material and/or vesicle composition may contain, in whole or in part, a fluorinated (including perfluorinated) compound. Suitable fluorinated compounds include, for example, fluorinated surfactants, including alkyl surfactants, and amphiphilic compounds. A wide variety of such compounds may be

employed, including, for example, the class of compounds which are commercially available as ZONYL® fluorosurfactants (the DuPont Company, Wilmington, DE), including the ZONYL® phosphate salts (e.g.,  $[F(CF_2CF_2)_{3-8}CH_2CH_2O]_{1-2}P(O)(O^+NH_4^+)_2$ ) which have terminal phosphate groups and ZONYL® sulfate salts which have terminal sulfate groups (e.g.,  $F(CF_2CF_2)_{3-8}CH_2CH_2SCH_2CH_2N^+(CH_3)_3OSO_2OCH_3$ ). Suitable ZONYL® surfactants also include, for example, ZONYL® fluorosurfactants identified as Telomer B, including Telomer B fluorosurfactants which are pegylated (i.e., have at least one polyethylene glycol group attached thereto), also known as PEG-Telomer B, available from the DuPont Company. Other suitable fluorosurfactants are described in U.S. Patent 10 Nos. 5,276,146, 5,344,930 and 5,562,893, and U.S. Application Serial No. 08/465,868, filed June 6, 1995, the disclosures of each of which are hereby incorporated by reference herein in their entirety.

It may also be desirable to use a fluorinated compound, especially a perfluorocarbon compound or a perfluoroether compound, which may be in the liquid state at the 15 temperature of use, including, for example, the *in vivo* temperature of the human body, to assist or enhance the stability of the lipid and/or vesicle compositions, and especially, gas filled vesicles. Suitable liquid perfluorocarbons which may be used include, for example, perfluorodecalin, perfluorododecalin, perfluoroctyliodide, perfluoroctylbromide, perfluorotripropylamine, and perfluorotributylamine. In general, perfluorocarbons 20 comprising about six or more carbon atoms will be liquids at normal human body temperature. Among these perfluorocarbons, perfluoroctylbromide and perfluorohexane, which are liquids at room temperature, are preferred. The gas which is present may be, for example, nitrogen or perfluoropropane, or may be derived from a gaseous precursor, which may also be a perfluorocarbon, for example, perfluoropentane. In the latter case, 25 the lipid stabilizing materials and/or vesicle compositions may be prepared from a mixture of perfluorocarbons, which for the examples given, would be perfluoropropane (gas) or perfluoropentane (gaseous precursor) and perfluoroctylbromide (liquid). Although not intending to be bound by any theory or theories of operation, it is believed that, in the case of vesicle compositions, the liquid fluorinated compound may be situated at the interface 30 between the gas and the membrane or wall surface of the vesicle. There may be thus formed a further stabilizing layer of liquid fluorinated compound on the internal surface of the stabilizing compound, for example, a biocompatible lipid used to form the vesicle, and

this perfluorocarbon layer may also prevent the gas from diffusing through the vesicle membrane. A gaseous precursor, within the context of the present invention, is a liquid at the temperature of manufacture and/or storage, but becomes a gas at least at or during the time of use. Preferred perfluorinated surfactants are the partially fluorinated

5 phosphocholine surfactants. In these preferred fluorinated surfactants, the dual alkyl compounds may be fluorinated at the terminal alkyl chains and the proximal carbons may be hydrogenated. These fluorinated phosphocholine surfactants may be used for making the stabilizing materials and/or vesicles of the present invention.

Other suitable fluorinated compounds for use as the stabilizing materials and/or  
10 vesicles of the present invention are described in U.S. Patent No. 5,562,893, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. For example, synthetic organic monomeric repeating units may be used to form polymers suitable as stabilizing materials, including hydroxyacids, lactones, lactides, glycolides, acryl containing compounds, aminotriazol, orthoesters, anyhdrides, ester imides, imides,  
15 acetals, urethanes, vinyl alcohols, enolketones, and organosiloxanes.

The method of introducing fluorine into any of these materials is known in the art. For example, the introduction of perfluoro-t-butyl moieties is described in U.S. Patent No. 5,234,680, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference herein in its entirety. These methods generally involve the reaction of perfluoroalkyl carbanions  
20 with host molecules, such as  $(CF_3)_3C^- + R-X \rightarrow (CF_3)_3C-R$ , where R is a host molecule and X is a good leaving group, such as bromine, chlorine, iodine or a sulfonato group. After adding a leaving group to the foregoing stabilizing material using methods well known in the art, perfluoro-t-butyl moieties can then be easily introduced to these derivatized stabilizing materials as described above. Additional methods are known in  
25 the art for the introduction of trifluoromethyl groups into various organic compounds. For example, trifluoromethyl groups may be introduced by nucleophilic perfluoroalkylation using perfluoroalkyl-trialkylsilanes. Fluorine can be introduced into any of the aforementioned stabilizing materials or vesicles either in their monomeric or polymeric form. Preferably, fluorine moieties are introduced into monomers, such as  
30 fatty acids, amino acids or polymerizable synthetic organic compounds, which are then polymerized for subsequent use as stabilizing materials and/or vesicles.

- 50 -

The introduction of fluorine into stabilizing materials and/or vesicles may also be accomplished by forming vesicles in the presence of a perfluorocarbon gas. For example, when vesicles are formed from proteins, such as human serum albumin in the presence of a perfluorocarbon gas, such as perfluoropropane, using mechanical

- 5 cavitation, fluorine from the gas phase becomes bound to the protein vesicles during formation. The presence of fluorine in the vesicles and/or stabilizing materials can be detected by NMR of vesicle debris which has been purified from disrupted vesicles.
- Fluorine can also be introduced into stabilizing materials and/or vesicles using other methods, such as sonication, spray-drying or emulsification techniques.
- 10 Another way in which fluorine can be introduced into the stabilizing material and/or vesicle is by using a fluorine-containing reactive compound. The term "reactive compound" refers to compounds which are capable of interacting with the stabilizing material and/or vesicle in such a manner that fluorine moieties become covalently attached to the stabilizing material and/or vesicle. When the stabilizing material is a
- 15 protein, preferred reactive compounds are either alkyl esters or acyl halides which are capable of reacting with the protein's amino groups to form an amide linkage via an acylation reaction. The reactive compound can be introduced at any stage during vesicle formation, but is preferably added to the gas phase prior to vesicle formation. For example, when vesicles are to be made using mechanical or ultrasound cavitation
- 20 techniques, the reactive compound can be added to the gas phase by bubbling the gas to be used in the formation of the vesicles (starting gas) through a solution of the reactive compound into the gas phase. The resultant gas mixture, which now contains the starting gas and the reactive compound, is then used to form vesicles. The vesicles are preferably formed by sonication of human serum albumin in the presence of a gas
- 25 mixture, as described in U.S. Patent No. 4,957,656, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

- Suitable fluorine containing alkyl esters and acyl halides for use as stabilizing materials and/or vesicle forming materials in the present invention include, for example, diethyl hexafluoroglutarate, diethyl tetrafluorosuccinate, methyl heptafluorobutyrate, ethyl heptafluorobutyrate, ethyl pentafluoropropionate, methyl pentafluoropropionate, ethyl perfluorooctanoate, methyl perfluorooctanoate, nonafluoropentanoyl chloride, perfluoropropionyl chloride, hexafluoroglutaryl chloride and heptafluorobutyryl chloride.

Other fluorine containing reactive compound can also be synthesized and used as the stabilizing materials and/or vesicle forming materials in the present invention, including, for example, aldehydes, isocyanates, isothiocyanates, epoxides, sulfonyl halides, anhydrides, acid halides and alkyl sulfonates, which contain perfluorocarbon moieties,

5 including -CF<sub>3</sub>, -C<sub>2</sub>F<sub>5</sub>, -C<sub>3</sub>F<sub>4</sub> and -C(CF<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>. These reactive compounds can be used to introduce fluorine moieties into any of the above stabilizing materials by choosing a combination which is appropriate to achieve covalent attachment of the fluorine moiety.

Sufficient fluorine should be introduced to decrease the permeability of the vesicle to the aqueous environment. This will result in a slower rate of gas exchange with the 10 aqueous environment which is evidenced by enhanced pressure resistance. Although the specific amount of fluorine necessary to stabilize the vesicle will depend on the components of the vesicle and the gas contained therein, after introduction of fluorine the vesicle will preferably contain 0.01 to 20% by weight, and more preferably about 1 to 10% by weight fluorine.

15 The stability of vesicles may be attributable, at least in part, to the materials from which the vesicles are made, including, for example, the lipids, polymers, proteins and/or surfactants described above, and it is often not necessary to employ additional stabilizing materials, although it is optional and may be preferred to do so. In addition to, or instead of, the lipid, protein and/or polymer compounds discussed above, the compositions 20 described herein may comprise one or more other stabilizing materials. Exemplary stabilizing materials include, for example, surfactants, fluorosurfactants and polymers. The stabilizing materials may be employed to desirably assist in the formation of vesicles and/or to assure substantial encapsulation of the gases, gaseous precursors, prodrugs and/or bioactive agents. Even for relatively insoluble, non-diffusible gases, such as 25 perfluoropropane or sulfur hexafluoride, improved vesicle compositions may be obtained when one or more stabilizing materials are utilized in the formation of the gas and/or gaseous precursor filled vesicles. These compounds may help improve the stability and the integrity of the vesicles with regard to their size, shape and/or other attributes. Suitable surfactants and fluorosurfactants useful as stabilizing materials for preparing the 30 gas and/or gaseous precursor filled vesicles include the surfactants and fluorosurfactants described in detail above.

Polymers useful as stabilizing materials and for preparing the gas and/or gaseous precursor filled vesicles may be of natural, semi-synthetic (modified natural) or synthetic origin. Exemplary natural polymers include naturally occurring polysaccharides, such as, for example, arabinans, fructans, fucans, galactans, galacturonans, glucans, mannans, 5 xylans (such as, for example, inulin), levan, fucoidan, carrageenan, galactocarolose, pectic acid, pectins, including amylose, pullulan, glycogen, amylopectin, cellulose, dextran, dextrin, dextrose, glucose, polyglucose, polydextrose, pustulan, chitin, agarose, keratin, chondroitin, dermatan, hyaluronic acid, alginic acid, xanthin gum, starch and various other natural homopolymer or heteropolymers, such as those containing one or more of the 10 following aldoses, ketoses, acids or amines: erythrose, threose, ribose, arabinose, xylose, lyxose, allose, altrose, glucose, dextrose, mannose, gulose, idose, galactose, talose, erythrulose, ribulose, xylulose, psicose, fructose, sorbose, tagatose, mannitol, sorbitol, lactose, sucrose, trehalose, maltose, cellobiose, glycine, serine, threonine, cysteine, tyrosine, asparagine, glutamine, aspartic acid, glutamic acid, lysine, arginine, histidine, 15 glucuronic acid, gluconic acid, glucaric acid, galacturonic acid, mannuronic acid, glucosamine, galactosamine, and neuraminic acid, and naturally occurring derivatives thereof. Accordingly, suitable polymers include, for example, proteins, such as albumin, polyalginates, and polylactide-coglycolide polymers. Exemplary semi-synthetic polymers include carboxymethylcellulose, hydroxymethylcellulose, hydroxypropylmethylcellulose, 20 methylcellulose, and methoxycellulose. Exemplary synthetic polymers include polyphosphazenes, hydroxyapatites, fluoroapatite polymers, polyethylenes (such as, for example, polyethylene glycol (including for example, the class of compounds referred to as Pluronics®, commercially available from BASF, Parsippany, NJ), polyoxyethylene, and polyethylene terephthalate), polypropylenes (such as, for example, polypropylene glycol), 25 polyurethanes (such as, for example, polyvinyl alcohol (PVA), polyvinyl chloride and polyvinylpyrrolidone), polyamides including nylon, polystyrene, polylactic acids, fluorinated hydrocarbon polymers, fluorinated carbon polymers (such as, for example, polytetrafluoroethylene), acrylate, methacrylate, and polymethylmethacrylate, and derivatives thereof. Methods for the preparation of vesicles which employ polymers as 30 stabilizing compounds will be readily apparent to one skilled in the art, in view of the present disclosure, when coupled with information known in the art, such as that described

- 53 -

and referred to in Unger, U.S. Patent No. 5,205,290, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference herein in its entirety.

Preferred embodiments of the present invention involve vesicles which comprise three components: (1) a neutral lipid, for example, a nonionic or zwitterionic lipid, (2) a negatively charged lipid, and (3) a lipid bearing a stabilizing material, for example, a hydrophilic polymer. Preferably, the amount of the negatively charged lipid will be greater than about 1 mole percent of the total lipid present, and the amount of lipid bearing a hydrophilic polymer will be greater than about 1 mole percent of the total lipid present.

Exemplary and preferred negatively charged lipids include phosphatidic acids. The lipid bearing a hydrophilic polymer will desirably be a lipid covalently linked to the polymer, and the polymer will preferably have a weight average molecular weight of from about 400 to about 100,000. Suitable hydrophilic polymers are preferably selected from the group consisting of polyethylene glycol (PEG), polypropylene glycol, polyvinylalcohol, and polyvinylpyrrolidone and copolymers thereof, with PEG polymers being preferred.

Preferably, the PEG polymer has a molecular weight of from about 1000 to about 7500, with molecular weights of from about 2000 to about 5000 being more preferred. The PEG or other polymer may be bound to the lipid, for example, DPPE, through a covalent bond, such as an amide, carbamate or amine linkage. In addition, the PEG or other polymer may be linked to a targeting ligand, or other phospholipids, with a covalent bond including, for example, amide, ester, ether, thioester, thioamide or disulfide bonds. Where the hydrophilic polymer is PEG, a lipid bearing such a polymer will be said to be "pegylated." In preferred form, the lipid bearing a hydrophilic polymer may be DPPE-PEG, including, for example, DPPE-PEG5000, which refers to DPPE having a polyethylene glycol polymer of a mean weight average molecular weight of about 5000 attached thereto (DPPE-PEG5000). Another suitable pegylated lipid is distearoylphosphatidylethanolamine-polyethylene glycol 5000 (DSPE-PEG5000).

In some embodiments of the present invention, the lipid compositions may include about 77.5 mol% DPPC, 12.5 mol% of DPPA, and 10 mol% of DPPE-PEG5000. Also preferred are compositions which comprise about 80 to about 90 mole % DPPC, about 5 to about 15 mole % DPPA and about 5 to about 15 mole % DPPE-PEG5000. Especially preferred are compositions which comprise DPPC, DPPA and DPPE-PEG5000 in a mole % ratio of 82:10:8, respectively. DPPC is substantially neutral, since the phosphatidyl portion is

- 54 -

negatively charged and the choline portion is positively charged. Consequently, DPPA, which is negatively charged, may be added to enhance stabilization in accordance with the mechanism described above. DPPE-PEG provides a pegylated material bound to the lipid membrane or skin of the vesicle by the DPPE moiety, with the PEG moiety free to 5 surround the vesicle membrane or skin, and thereby form a physical barrier to various enzymatic and other endogenous agents in the body whose function is to degrade such foreign materials. The DPPE-PEG may provide more vesicles of a smaller size which are safe and stable to pressure when combined with other lipids, such as DPPC and DPPA, in the given ratios. It is also theorized that the pegylated material, because of its structural 10 similarity to water, may be able to defeat the action of the macrophages of the human immune system, which would otherwise tend to surround and remove the foreign object. The result is an increase in the time during which the stabilized vesicles may function as diagnostic imaging contrast media.

The terms "stable" or "stabilized" mean that the vesicles are preferably substantially 15 resistant to degradation, including, for example, loss of vesicle structure or encapsulated gas, gaseous precursor, prodrug and/or bioactive agent, for a useful period of time. Typically, the vesicles employed in the present invention have a desirable shelf life, often retaining at least about 90% by volume of its original structure for a period of at least about two to three weeks under normal ambient conditions. In preferred form, the vesicles 20 are desirably stable for a period of time of at least about 1 month, more preferably at least about 2 months, even more preferably at least about 6 months, still more preferably about eighteen months, and yet more preferably up to about 3 years. The vesicles described herein, including gas and/or gaseous precursor filled vesicles, may also be stable even under adverse conditions, such as temperatures and pressures which are above or below 25 those experienced under normal ambient conditions.

The gas and/or gaseous precursor filled vesicles used in the present invention may be controlled according to size, solubility and heat stability by choosing from among the various additional or auxiliary stabilizing materials described herein. These materials can affect the parameters of the vesicles, especially vesicles formulated from lipids, not only 30 by their physical interaction with the membranes, but also by their ability to modify the viscosity and surface tension of the surface of the gas and/or gaseous precursor filled vesicle. Accordingly, the gas and/or gaseous precursor filled vesicles used in the present

- 55 -

invention may be favorably modified and further stabilized, for example, by the addition of one or more of a wide variety of (i) viscosity modifiers, including, for example, carbohydrates and their phosphorylated and sulfonated derivatives; polyethers, preferably with molecular weight ranges between 400 and 100,000; and di- and trihydroxy alkanes  
5 and their polymers, preferably with molecular weight ranges between 200 and 50,000; (ii) emulsifying and/or solubilizing agents including, for example, acacia, cholesterol, diethanolamine, glyceryl monostearate, lanolin alcohols, lecithin, mono- and di-glycerides, mono-ethanolamine, oleic acid, oleyl alcohol, poloxamer, for example, poloxamer 188, poloxamer 184, and poloxamer 181, Pluronics® (BASF, Parsippany, NJ), polyoxyethylene  
10 50 stearate, polyoxyl 35 castor oil, polyoxyl 10 oleyl ether, polyoxyl 20 cetostearyl ether, polyoxyl 40 stearate, polysorbate 20, polysorbate 40, polysorbate 60, polysorbate 80, propylene glycol diacetate, propylene glycol monostearate, sodium lauryl sulfate, sodium stearate, sorbitan monolaurate, sorbitan monooleate, sorbitan monopalmitate, sorbitan monostearate, stearic acid, trolamine, and emulsifying wax; (iii) suspending and/or  
15 viscosity-increasing agents, including, for example, acacia, agar, alginic acid, aluminum monostearate, bentonite, magma, carborner 934P, carboxymethylcellulose, calcium and sodium and sodium 12, carrageenan, cellulose, dextran, gelatin, guar gum, locust bean gum, veegum, hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl methylcellulose, magnesium-aluminum-silicate, Zeolites®, methylcellulose, pectin, polyethylene oxide, povidone,  
20 propylene glycol alginate, silicon dioxide, sodium alginate, tragacanth, xanthin gum, α-d-gluconolactone, glycerol and mannitol; (iv) synthetic suspending agents, such as polyethylene glycol (PEG), polyvinylpyrrolidone (PVP), polyvinylalcohol (PVA), polypropylene glycol (PPG), and polysorbate; and (v) tonicity raising agents which stabilize and add tonicity, including, for example, sorbitol, mannitol, trehalose, sucrose,  
25 propylene glycol and glycerol.

The present lipid and/or vesicles are desirably formulated in an aqueous environment which can induce the lipid, because of its hydrophobic-hydrophilic nature, to form vesicles, which may be the most stable configuration which can be achieved in such an environment. Diluents which may be used to create such an aqueous environment include, 30 for example, water, normal saline, physiological saline, deionized water and water containing one or more dissolved solutes, such as salts or sugars, which preferably do not interfere with the formation and/or stability of the vesicles or their use as delivery vehicles

- 56 -

or diagnostic agents, such as ultrasound contrast agents, MRI contrast agents, CT contrast agents and optical imaging agents.

The present stabilizing materials or vesicles preferably comprise a gas, such as an inert gas. The gas provides the stabilizing materials or vesicles with enhanced reflectivity,

- 5 particularly in connection with stabilizing materials or vesicles in which the gas is entrapped within the stabilizing materials or vesicles. This may increase their effectiveness as delivery vehicles or contrast agents. Preferred gases are inert and biocompatible, and include, for example, air, noble gases, such as helium, rubidium hyperpolarized xenon, hyperpolarized argon, hyperpolarized helium, neon, argon and
- 10 xenon, carbon dioxide, nitrogen, fluorine, oxygen, sulfur-based gases, such as sulfur hexafluoride and sulfur tetrafluoride, fluorinated gases, including, for example, partially fluorinated gases or completely fluorinated gases, and mixtures thereof. Paramagnetic gases, such as  $^{17}\text{O}_2$  may also be used in the stabilizing materials and vesicles.

In certain preferred embodiments, a gas, for example, air or a perfluorocarbon gas, is combined with a liquid perfluorocarbon, such as perfluorohexane, perfluoroheptane, perfluorodecalin, perfluorododecalin, perfluoroctyl iodide, perfluoroctylbromide, perfluorotripropylamine and perfluorotributylamine.

- 15 It may also be desirable to incorporate a precursor to a gaseous substance in the stabilizing materials or vesicles. Such precursors include materials that are capable of being converted to a gas *in vivo*, preferably where the gaseous precursor and gas produced are biocompatible. Among the gaseous precursors which are suitable for use in stabilizing materials and compositions described herein are agents which are sensitive to pH. These agents include materials that are capable of evolving gas, for example, upon being exposed to a pH that is neutral or acidic. Examples of such pH sensitive agents include salts of an
- 20 acid which is selected from the group consisting of inorganic acids, organic acids and mixtures thereof. Carbonic acid ( $\text{H}_2\text{CO}_3$ ) is an example of a suitable inorganic acid, and aminomalonic acid is an example of a suitable organic acid. Other acids, including inorganic and organic acids, would be readily apparent to one skilled in the art in view of the present disclosure.
- 25 30 Gaseous precursors derived from salts are preferably selected from the group consisting of alkali metal salts, ammonium salts and mixtures thereof. More preferably, the salt is selected from the group consisting of carbonate, bicarbonate, sesquecarbonate,

aminomalonate and mixtures thereof. Suitable gaseous precursor materials which are derived from salts include, for example, lithium carbonate, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, lithium bicarbonate, sodium bicarbonate, potassium bicarbonate, magnesium carbonate, calcium carbonate, magnesium bicarbonate, ammonium carbonate, ammonium bicarbonate, ammonium sesquecarbonate, sodium sesquecarbonate, sodium aminomalonate and ammonium aminomalonate. Aminomalonate is well known in the art, and its preparation is described, for example, in Thanassi, *Biochemistry*, 9(3):525-532 (1970); Fitzpatrick et al., *Inorganic Chemistry*, 13(3):568-574 (1974); and Stelmashok et al., *Koordinatsionnaya Khimiya*, 3(4):524-527 (1977). The disclosures of each of these publications are hereby incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

In addition to, or instead of, being sensitive to changes in pH, the gaseous precursor materials may also comprise compounds which are sensitive to changes in temperature. Exemplary of suitable gaseous precursors which are sensitive to changes in temperature are the perfluorocarbons. As the artisan will appreciate, a particular perfluorocarbon may exist in the liquid state when the stabilizing materials are first made, and are thus used as a gaseous precursor. Alternatively, the perfluorocarbon may exist in the gaseous state when the stabilizing materials are made, and are thus used directly as a gas. Whether the perfluorocarbon is used as a liquid or a gas generally depends on its liquid/gas phase transition temperature, or boiling point. For example, a preferred perfluorocarbon, perfluoropentane, has a liquid/gas phase transition temperature (boiling point) of 29.5°C. This means that perfluoropentane is generally a liquid at room temperature (about 25°C), but is converted to a gas within the human body, the normal temperature of which is about 37°C, which is above the transition temperature of perfluoropentane. Thus, under normal circumstances, perfluoropentane is a gaseous precursor. As a further example, there are the homologs of perfluoropentane, namely perfluorobutane and perfluorohexane. The liquid/gas transition of perfluorobutane is 4°C and that of n-perfluorohexane is 57°C. As known to one of ordinary skill in the art, the effective boiling point of a substance may be related to the pressure to which that substance is exposed. This relationship is exemplified by the ideal gas law:  $PV = nRT$ , where P is pressure, V is volume, n is moles of substance, R is the gas constant, and T is temperature. The ideal gas law indicates that as pressure increases, the effective boiling point increases also. Conversely, as pressure decreases, the effective boiling point decreases.

- 58 -

A wide variety of materials can be used as liquids, gases and gaseous precursors for entrapping within stabilizing materials and vesicles. For gaseous precursors, it is only required that the material be capable of undergoing a phase transition to the gas phase upon passing through the appropriate temperature. Gases and gaseous precursors for use

5 in the present invention include, for example, hexafluoroacetone, 1,3-dichlorotetrafluoroacetone, tetrafluoroallene, boron trifluoride, 1,2,3-trichloro-2-fluoro-1,3-butadiene, hexafluoro-1,3-butadiene, 1-fluorobutane, perfluorobutane, decafluorobutane, perfluoro-1-butene, perfluoro-2-butene, 2-chloro-1,1,1,4,4,4-hexafluorobutyne, 2-chloro-1,1,1,4,4,4-hexafluoro-2-butene, perfluoro-2-butyne, octafluorocyclobutane, perfluorocyclobutene,

10 perfluorocyclobutane, perfluorocyclopentane, octafluorocyclopentene, perfluorocyclopropane, 1,1,1-trifluorodiazoethane, hexafluorodimethylamine, perfluoroethane, perfluoropropane, perfluoropentane, hexafluoroethane, hexafluoropropylene, 1,1,2,2,3,3,4,4-octafluorobutane, 1,1,1,3,3-pentafluorobutane, octafluoropropane, octafluorocyclopentene, 1,1-dichlorofluoroethane, hexafluoro-2-butyne, octafluoro-2-butene, hexafluorobuta-1,3-diene, perfluorodimethylamine, 4-methyl-1,1,1,2-tetrafluoroethane, 1,1,1-trifluoroethane, 1,1,2,2-tetrafluoroethane, 1,1,2-trichloro-1,2,2-trifluoroethane, 1,1,1-trichloro-2,2,2-trifluoroethane, 1,1-dichloro-1,2-difluoroethylene, 1,1-dichloro-1,2,2,2-tetrafluoroethane, 1-chloro-1,1,2,2,2-pentafluoroethane, 1,1-difluoro-2-chloroethane, 1,1-dichloro-2-fluoroethane, dichloro-1,1,2,2-tetrafluoroethane, 1-chloro-1,1,2,2-tetrafluoroethane, 2-chloro-1,1-difluoroethane, 1,1,2-trifluoro-2-chloroethane, 1,2-difluorochloroethane, chloropentafluoroethane, dichlorotrifluoroethane, fluoroethane, nitropentafluoroethane, nitrosopentafluoroethane, perfluoroethylamine, 1,2-dichloro-2,2-difluoroethane, 1,1-dichloro-1,2-difluoroethane, 1,2-dichloro-1,1,3-trifluoropropane, 1,2-difluoroethane, 1,2-difluoroethylene, trifluoromethanesulfonylchloride,

15 trifluoromethanesulfenylchloride, (pentafluorothio)trifluoromethane, trifluoromethanesulfonylfluoride, bromodifluoronitroso-methane, bromofluoromethane, bromochlorodifluoromethane, bromochlorofluoromethane, bromotrifluoromethane, bromotrifluoroethane, chlorodifluoronitromethane, chlorofluoromethane, chlorotrifluoromethane, chlorodifluoromethane, dibromofluoro-methane,

20 dibromodifluoromethane, dichlorodifluoromethane, dichlorofluoromethane, 1-bromoperfluorobutane, difluoromethane, difluoroiodomethane, fluoromethane, perfluoromethane, iodotrifluoromethane, iodotrifluoroethylene, nitrotrifluoromethane,

25

30

nitrosotrifluoromethane, tetrafluoromethane, trichlorofluoromethane, trifluoromethane, perfluoropent-1-ene, 1,1,1,2,2,3-hexafluoropropane, 2,2-difluoropropane, heptafluoro-1-nitropropane, heptafluoro-1-nitrosopropane, heptafluoro-2-iodopropane, perfluoropropane, hexafluoropropane, 1,1,1,2,3,3-hexafluoro-2,3-dichloropropane, 1-bromo-1,1,2,3,3,3-hexafluoropropane, 1-bromoperfluoropropane, 2-chloropentafluoro-1,3-butadiene, 3-fluoropropane, 3-fluoropropylene, perfluoropropylene, perfluorotetrahydropyran, perfluoromethyltetrahydrofuran, perfluorobutylmethyl ether, perfluoromethyl-n-butyl ether, perfluoromethylisopropyl ether, perfluoromethyl-t-butyl ether, perfluorobutyl ethyl ether, perfluoromethylpentyl ether, 3,3,3-trifluoropropyne, 3-fluorostyrene, sulfur (di)-decafluoride ( $S_2F_{10}$ ), sulfur hexafluoride, selenium hexafluoride, trifluoroacetonitrile, trifluoromethyl peroxide, trifluoromethyl sulfide, tungsten hexafluoride, 1-bromo-nonafluorobutane, 1-chloro-1-fluoro-1-bromomethane, 1-bromo-2,4-difluorobenzene, 2-iodo-1,1,1-trifluoroethane, bromine pentafluoride, perfluoro-2-methyl-2-pentene, 1,1,1,3,3-pentafluoropentane, 3-fluorobenzaldehyde, 2-fluoro-5-nitrotoluene, 3-fluorostyrene, 3,5-difluoroaniline, 2,2,2-trifluoroethylacrylate, 3-(trifluoromethoxy)acetophenone, bis(perfluoroisopropyl) ether, bis(perfluoropropyl) ether, perfluoro isobutyl methyl ether, perfluoro n-propyl ethyl ether, perfluoro cyclobutyl methyl ether, perfluoro cyclopropyl ethyl ether, perfluoro isopropyl methyl ether, perfluoro n-propyl methyl ether, perfluorodiethyl ether, perfluoro cyclopropyl methyl ether, perfluoro methyl ethyl ether, perfluoro dimethyl ether, air, noble gases, such as helium, rubidium hyperpolarized xenon, hyperpolarized argon, hyperpolarized helium, neon, argon, xenon, carbon dioxide, nitrogen, isopropyl acetylene, allene, 1,2-butadiene, 2,3-butadiene, 1,3-butadiene, 2-methyl-1,3-butadiene, butadiene, 2-methylbutane, 1-butene, 2-butene, 2-methyl-1-butene, 3-methyl-1-butene, 4-phenyl-3-butene-2-one, 2-methyl-1-butene-3-yne, butyl nitrate, 1-butyne, 2-butyne, 3-methyl-1-butyne, 2-bromobutylaldehyde, carbonyl sulfide, crotononitrile, cyclobutane, methylcyclobutane, cyclopropane, 3-chlorocyclopentene, dimethylamine, 1,2-dimethylcyclopropane, 1,1-dimethylcyclopropane, 1,2-dimethylcyclopropane, ethylcyclopropane, methylcyclopropane, diacetylene, 3-ethyl-3-methyl diaziridine, dimethylethylamine, bis(dimethylphosphine)amine, dimethyloxonium chloride, 2,3-dimethyl-2-norbornane, 1,3-dioxolane-2-one, 1,1-dichloroethane, 1,1-dichloroethylene, chloroethane, 1,1-dichloroethane, methane, chlorodinitromethane, iodomethane, disilanomethane, 2-

- 60 -

- methylbutane, methyl ether, methyl isopropyl ether, methyl lactate, methylnitrite, methylsulfide, methyl vinyl ether, neon, neopentane, nitrogen, nitrous oxide, 1,2,3-nonadecanetricarboxylic acid 2-hydroxytrimethyl ester, 1-nonene-3-yne, 1,4-pentadiene, n-pentane, 4-amino-4-methylpentan-2-one, 1-pentene, 2-pentene (cis and trans), 3-5 bromopent-1-ene, 2-chloropropane, tetrachlorophthalic acid, 2,3,6-trimethyl-piperidine, propane, 1-chloropropane, 1-chloropropylene, chloropropylene-(trans), chloropropane-(trans), 2-chloropropylene, 2-aminopropane, 1,2-epoxypropane, propene, propyne, 2,4-diaminotoluene, vinyl acetylene, vinyl ether, ethyl vinyl ether, 5-bromovaleryl chloride, 1-bromoethane, 6-bromo-1-hexene, 2-bromo-2-nitropropane, 2-bromo-5-nitrothiophene, 10 2-bromopropene, 3-chloro-5,5-dimethyl-2-cylohexene, 2-chloro-2-methylpropane and mixtures thereof.

- Preferred gases and gaseous precursors are compounds which are sparingly soluble in water but which may, in some cases, be liposoluble, such as low molecular weight alkanes and their fluorinated analogs. In preferred embodiments, the gas comprises a fluorinated 15 gas, which includes gases containing one or more fluorine atoms. Preferred are gases which contain more than one fluorine atom, with perfluorocarbons (fully fluorinated fluorocarbons) being more preferred. Preferred gases and gaseous precursors include, for example, nitrogen, fluorinated carbons, perfluorocarbons, sulfur hexafluoride, perfluoroether compounds and combinations thereof.
- 20 The preferred perfluorocarbons generally have from 1 to about 4 carbon atoms and from about 4 to about 10 fluorine atoms, most preferably perfluorobutane ( $C_4F_{10}$ ). Preferred gaseous precursors generally have from about 4 to about 8 carbon atoms, more preferably about 5 or about 6 carbon atoms, and from about 12 to about 15 fluorine atoms. The perfluorocarbon gas may be saturated, unsaturated or cyclic, including, for example, 25 perfluoromethane, perfluoroethane, perfluoropropane, perfluorocyclopropane, perfluorobutane, perfluorocyclobutane, perfluoropentane, perfluorocyclopentane, and mixtures thereof. More preferably, the perfluorocarbon gas is perfluoropropane or perfluorobutane, with perfluoropropane being particularly preferred. Another preferable gas is sulfur hexafluoride. Yet another preferable gas is heptafluoropropane, including 30 1,1,1,2,3,3-heptafluoropropane and its isomer, 1,1,2,2,3,3-heptafluoropropane. Mixtures of different types of gases, such as mixtures of a perfluorocarbon gas and another type of gas, such as, for example, air or nitrogen, can also be used in the compositions of

the present invention. Other gases, including the gases exemplified above, would be apparent to one skilled in the art in view of the present disclosure.

Preferred ethers for use in the present invention include partially or fully fluorinated ethers, preferably having a boiling point of from about 36°C to about 60°C. Fluorinated ethers are ethers in which one or more hydrogen atoms is replaced by a fluorine atom. Fluorinated ethers have the general formula  $CX_3(CX_2)_n-O-(CX_2)_nCX_3$ , wherein X is a hydrogen atom, a fluorine atom or another halogen atom provided that at least one of X is a fluorine atom. Generally, fluorinated ethers containing about 4 to about 6 carbon atoms will have a boiling point within the preferred range for the invention, although smaller or 10 larger chain fluorinated ethers may also be employed in appropriate circumstances.

Exemplary fluorinated ethers include  $CF_3CF_2OCF_2CF_3$ ,  $CF_3O(CF_2)_2CF_3$  and  $CF_3OCF(CF_3)_2$ . Other preferred perfluoroether analogues contain between 4 and 6 carbon atoms, and optionally contain one halide ion, preferably  $Br^-$ . For example, compounds having the structure  $C_nF_yH_xOBr$ , where n is an integer of from 1 to about 6, y is an integer 15 of from 0 to about 13, and x is an integer of from 0 to about 13, are useful as gaseous precursors. Examples of useful gaseous precursors having this formula include perfluoropropoxybromide and 2-bromooxyperfluoropropane. Other compounds that may be used in the present invention include compounds comprising a sulfur atom, such as those of the formula  $CF_3-(CF_2)_n-SF_5$  or  $SF_5-(CF_2)_n-SF_5$ , where n is an integer of from 1 to 20 about 10.

The gaseous precursor materials may also be photoactivated materials, such as a diazonium ion and aminomalonate. As discussed more fully hereinafter, certain stabilizing materials and/or vesicles, particularly vesicles, may be formulated so that gas is formed at the target tissue or by the action of sound on the stabilizing materials. Examples 25 of gaseous precursors are described, for example, in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,088,499 and 5,149,319, the disclosures of each of which are hereby incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. Other gaseous precursors, in addition to those exemplified above, will be apparent to one skilled in the art in view of the present disclosure.

The gases and/or gaseous precursors are preferably incorporated in the stabilizing 30 materials and/or vesicles irrespective of the physical nature of the composition. Thus, it is contemplated that the gases and/or gaseous precursors may be incorporated, for example, in stabilizing materials in which the stabilizing materials are aggregated randomly, such as

- 62 -

emulsions, dispersions or suspensions, as well as in vesicles, including vesicles which are formulated from lipids, such as micelles and liposomes. Incorporation of the gases and/or gaseous precursors in the stabilizing materials and/or vesicles may be achieved by using any of a number of methods. For example, in the case of vesicles based on lipids, the  
5 formation of gas filled vesicles can be achieved by shaking or otherwise agitating an aqueous mixture which comprises a gas and/or gaseous precursor and one or more lipids. This promotes the formation of stabilized vesicles within which the gas and/or gaseous precursor is encapsulated.

In addition, a gas may be bubbled directly into an aqueous mixture of stabilizing  
10 materials and/or vesicle-forming compounds. Alternatively, a gas instillation method can be used as disclosed, for example, in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,352,435 and 5,228,446, the disclosures of each of which are hereby incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. Suitable methods for incorporating the gas and/or gaseous precursor in cationic lipid compositions are disclosed also in U.S. Patent No. 4,865,836, the disclosure of which is  
15 hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. Other methods would be apparent to one skilled in the art based on the present disclosure. Preferably, the gas may be instilled in the stabilizing materials and/or vesicles after or during the addition of the stabilizing material and/or during formation of vesicles.

In preferred embodiments, the gases and/or gaseous precursors are incorporated in  
20 vesicle compositions, with micelles and liposomes being preferred. Vesicles in which a gas or gaseous precursor or both are encapsulated are advantageous in that they provide improved reflectivity *in vivo*.

It is preferred that the stabilizing materials, and especially the vesicles, be formulated  
25 from lipids and optional stabilizing compounds to promote the formation of stable vesicles, as discussed in detail above. Additionally, it is preferred that the stabilizing materials and/or vesicles comprise a highly stable gas as well. The phrase "highly stable gas" refers to a gas which has limited solubility and diffusability in aqueous media. Exemplary highly stable gases include perfluorocarbons since they are generally less diffusible and relatively insoluble in aqueous media. Accordingly, their use may promote  
30 the formation of highly stable vesicles.

Compositions employed herein may also include, with respect to their preparation, formation and use, gaseous precursors that can be activated to change from a liquid or

- 63 -

solid state into a gas by temperature, pH, light, and energy (such as ultrasound). The gaseous precursors may be made into gas by storing the precursors at reduced pressure. For example, a vial stored under reduced pressure may create a headspace of perfluoropentane or perfluorohexane gas, useful for creating a preformed gas prior to injection. Preferably, the gaseous precursors may be activated by temperature. Set forth below is a table listing a series of gaseous precursors which undergo phase transitions from liquid to gaseous states at relatively close to normal body temperature (37°C) or below, and the size of the emulsified droplets that would be required to form a vesicle of a maximum size of 10  $\mu\text{m}$ .

10

TABLE 1: Physical Characteristics of Compounds and  
Diameter of Emulsified Droplet to Form a 10  $\mu\text{m}$  Vesicle\*

|    | Compound                     | Molecular Weight | Boiling Point (° C) | Density | Diameter ( $\mu\text{m}$ ) of emulsified droplet to make 10 micron vesicle |
|----|------------------------------|------------------|---------------------|---------|--|
|    | perfluoro pentane            | 288.04           | 29.5                | 1.7326  | 2.9  |
| 15 | 1-fluorobutane               | 76.11            | 32.5                | 0.67789 | 1.2  |
|    | 2-methyl butane (isopentane) | 72.15            | 27.8                | 0.6201  | 2.6  |
| 20 | 2-methyl 1-butene            | 70.13            | 31.2                | 0.6504  | 2.5  |
|    | 2-methyl-2-butene            | 70.13            | 38.6                | 0.6623  | 2.5  |
| 25 | 1-butene-3-yne-2-methyl      | 66.10            | 34.0                | 0.6801  | 2.4  |
|    | 3-methyl-1-butyne            | 68.12            | 29.5                | 0.6660  | 2.5  |
|    | octafluoro cyclobutane       | 200.04           | -5.8                | 1.48    | 2.8  |
| 30 | decafluoro butane            | 238.04           | -2                  | 1.517   | 3.0  |
|    | hexafluoro ethane            | 138.01           | -78.1               | 1.607   | 2.7  |

\*Source: Chemical Rubber Company Handbook of Chemistry and Physics, Robert C. Weast and David R. Lide, eds., CRC Press, Inc. Boca Raton, Florida (1989-1990).

35

As noted above, it is preferred to optimize the utility of the stabilizing materials and/or vesicles, especially vesicles formulated from lipids, by using gases of limited solubility. The phrase "limited solubility" refers to the ability of the gas to diffuse out of the vesicles by virtue of its solubility in the surrounding aqueous medium. A greater solubility in the aqueous medium imposes a gradient with the gas in the vesicle such that the gas may have a tendency to diffuse out of the vesicle. A lesser solubility in the aqueous milieu, may, on the other hand, decrease or eliminate the gradient between the vesicle and the interface such that diffusion of the gas out of the vesicle may be impeded. Preferably, the gas entrapped in the vesicle has a solubility less than that of oxygen, that is, about 1 part gas in about 32 parts water. See *Matheson Gas Data Book*, 1966, Matheson Company Inc. More preferably, the gas entrapped in the vesicle possesses a solubility in water less than that of air; and even more preferably, the gas entrapped in the vesicle possesses a solubility in water less than that of nitrogen.

It may be desirable, in certain embodiments, to formulate vesicles from substantially impermeable polymeric materials. In these embodiments, it is generally unnecessary to employ a gas which is highly insoluble. For example, stable vesicles which comprise substantially impermeable polymeric materials may be formulated with gases having higher solubilities, for example, air or nitrogen.

The compounds, compositions and stabilizing materials of the present invention may further comprise a targeting ligand. Targeting ligands are preferably associated with the prodrug and/or stabilizing materials and/or vesicles covalently or non-covalently. In the case of stabilizing materials, the targeting ligand may be bound, for example, via a covalent or non-covalent bond, to at least one of the lipids, proteins, polymers or surfactants incorporated in the stabilizing materials. In the case of prodrugs, the targeting ligand may be covalently bound to a reactive moiety on the prodrug or may be bound by a spacer or linker molecule with a reactive end such as an amine, hydroxyl, or carboxylic acid functional group.

Preferably, the targeting ligand is bound to the prodrug, stabilizing materials and/or vesicles covalently. In the case of lipid compositions which comprise cholesterol, the targeting ligand is preferably bound to the cholesterol substantially only non-covalently,

and/or the targeting ligand is bound covalently to a component of the composition, for example, another lipid, such as a phospholipid, other than the cholesterol.

If desired, the targeting ligands may also be bound to other stabilizing materials, for example, polymers or surfactants, which may be present in the compositions. The 5 targeting ligands which are incorporated in the compositions of the present invention are preferably substances which are capable of targeting receptors and/or tissues *in vivo* and/or *in vitro*. With respect to the targeting of tissue, the targeting ligands are desirably capable of targeting heart tissue and membranous tissues, including endothelial and epithelial cells. In the case of receptors, the targeting ligands are desirably capable of targeting 10 lymphocyte receptors, such as T-cells, B-cells or interleukin-2 receptors. It is contemplated that preferred targeting ligands for use in targeting tissues and/or receptors, including the tissues and receptors exemplified above, are selected from the group consisting of proteins, including antibodies, antibody fragments, hormones, hormone analogues, glycoproteins and lectins, peptides, polypeptides, amino acids, sugars, such as 15 saccharides, including monosaccharides and polysaccharides, and carbohydrates, vitamins, steroids, steroid analogs, hormones, cofactors, bioactive agents, and genetic material, including nucleosides, nucleotides, nucleotide acid constructs and polynucleotides, with peptides being particularly preferred.

Generally speaking, peptides which are particularly useful as targeting ligands include 20 natural, modified natural, or synthetic peptides that incorporate additional modes of resistance to degradation by vascularly circulating esterases, amidases, or peptidases. One very useful method of stabilization of peptide moieties incorporates the use of cyclization techniques. As an example, the end-to-end cyclization whereby the carboxy terminus is 25 covalently linked to the amine terminus via an amide bond may be useful to inhibit peptide degradation and increase circulating half-life. Additionally, a side chain-to-side chain cyclization is also particularly useful in inducing stability. In addition, an end-to-side chain cyclization may be a useful modification as well. In addition, the substitution of an L-amino acid for a D-amino acid in a strategic region of the peptide may offer resistance 30 to biological degradation. Suitable targeting ligands, and methods for their preparation, will be readily apparent to one skilled in the art, in view of the disclosure herein.

Preferred targeting ligands in the present invention include cell adhesion molecules (CAM), among which are, for example, cytokines, integrins, cadherins, immunoglobulins and selectins, all of which are discussed in detail below.

In connection with the targeting of endothelial cells, suitable targeting ligands include, 5 for example, one or more of the following: growth factors, including, for example, basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF), acidic fibroblast growth factor (aFGF), transforming growth factor-alpha (TGF- $\alpha$ ), transforming growth factor-beta (TGF- $\beta$ ), platelet-derived endothelial cell growth factor (PD-ECGF) vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) and human growth factor (HGF); angiogenin; tumor necrosis factors, including tumor necrosis 10 factor-alpha (TNF- $\alpha$ ) and tumor necrosis factor-beta (TNF- $\beta$ ), and receptor antibodies and fragments thereof to tumor necrosis factor (TNF) receptor 1 or 2 family, including, for example, TNF-R1, TNF-R2, FAS, TNFR-RP, NGF-R, CD30, CD40, CD27, OX40 and 4-1BB; copper-containing polyribonucleotide angiotropin with a molecular weight of about 4,500, as well as low molecular weight non-peptide angiogenic factors, such as 1- 15 butyryl glycerol; the prostaglandins, including, for example, prostaglandin E<sub>1</sub> (PGE<sub>1</sub>) and prostaglandin E<sub>2</sub> (PGE<sub>2</sub>); nicotinamide; adenosine; dipyridamole; dobutamine; hyaluronic acid degradation products, such as, for example, degradation products resulting from hydrolysis of  $\beta$  linkages, including hyalobiuronic acid; angiogenesis inhibitors, including, for example, collagenase inhibitors; minocycline; medroxyprogesterone; chitin chemically 20 modified with 6-O-sulfate and 6-O-carboxymethyl groups; angiostatic steroids, such as tetrahydrocortisol; and heparin, including fragments of heparin, such as, for example, fragments having a molecular weight of about 6,000, admixed with steroids, such as, for example, cortisone or hydrocortisone; angiogenesis inhibitors, including angioinhibin (AGM-1470 - an angiostatic antibiotic); platelet factor 4; protamine; sulfated 25 polysaccharide peptidoglycan complexes derived from the bacterial wall of an *Arthobacter* species; fungal-derived angiogenesis inhibitors, such as fumagillin derived from *Aspergillus fumigatus*; D-penicillamine; gold thiomalate; thrombospondin; vitamin D<sub>3</sub> analogues, including, for example, 1- $\alpha$ ,25-dihydroxy vitamin D<sub>3</sub> and a synthetic analogue 30 22-oxa-1- $\alpha$ ,25-dihydroxy vitamin D<sub>3</sub>; interferons, including, for example,  $\alpha$ -interferon,  $\beta$ -interferon and  $\gamma$ -interferon; cytokines and cytokine fragments, such as the interleukins, including, for example, interleukin-1 (IL-1), interleukin-2 (IL-2), interleukin-3 (IL-3), interleukin-4 (IL-4), interleukin-5 (IL-5), interleukin-6 (IL-6), interleukin-7 (IL-7) and

interleukin-8 (IL-8); erythropoietin; a 20-mer peptide or smaller for binding to receptor or antagonists to native cytokines; granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factor (GMCSF); LTB<sub>4</sub> leukocyte receptor antagonists; heparin, including low molecular weight fragments of heparin or analogues of heparin; simple sulfated polysaccharides, such as cyclodextrins, including α-, β- and γ-cyclodextrin; tetradecasulfate; transferrin; ferritin; platelet factor 4; protamine; Gly-His-Lys complexed to copper; ceruloplasmin; (12R)-hydroxyeicosatrienoic acid; okadaic acid; lectins; antibodies; CD11a/CD18; and Very Late Activation Integrin-4 (VLA-4).

In another embodiment, small peptides which bind the interleukin-1 (IL-1) receptor may be used. For example, peptides generated by phage display core sequences of QPY have been shown to be essential for peptide binding, including, for example, AF12198, a 15-mer with a core sequence of WYQJY, where J is azetidine; and IL-1 antagonists with K<sub>d</sub> 10<sup>-10</sup> to 10<sup>-12</sup>M, such as AcPhe-Glu, Trp-Pro-Gly-Trp-Tyr-Gln-Aze-Tyr-Ala-Leu-Pro-Leu-CONH<sub>2</sub> or Ac-Phe-Glu-Trp-Pro-Gly-Trp-Tyr-Gln-Aze-Tyr-Ala-Leu-Pro-Leu-Endothelial-leukocyte adhesion molecules (ELAM's) are antigens which are expressed by endothelial cells under conditions of stress which then facilitate the migration of the leukocytes across the endothelium lining the vasculature into the surrounding tissues. It is also the surprising discovery that these same endothelial-leukocyte adhesion molecules may be advantageously exploited as receptors for targeting of vesicles. These endothelial cell adhesion molecules belong to a family known as selectins in which the known members, such as GMP-140, all participate in endothelial-leukocyte adhesion and include ELAM-1, LAM-1 and the granule membrane protein 140 (GMP-140) also known as platelet activation-dependent granule-external membrane protein (PADGEM), VCAM-1/INCAM-110 (Vascular Adhesion Molecule/Inducible Adhesion Molecule) and ICAM-1 (Intercellular Adhesion Molecule).

The cadherin family of cell adhesion molecules may also be used as targeting ligands, including for example, the E-, N-, and P-cadherins, cadherin-4, cadherin-5, cadherin-6, cadherin-7, cadherin-8, cadherin-9, cadherin-10, and cadherin-11; and most preferably cadherin C-5. Further, antibodies directed to cadherins, such as, for example, the monoclonal antibody Ec6C10, may be used to recognize cadherins expressed locally by specific endothelial cells.

A wide variety of different targeting ligands can be selected to bind to the cytoplasmic domains of the ELAM molecules. Targeting ligands in this regard may include lectins, a wide variety of carbohydrate or sugar moieties, antibodies, antibody fragments, Fab fragments, such as, for example, Fab'2, and synthetic peptides, including, for example,

5 Arginine-Glycine-Aspartic Acid (R-G-D) which may be targeted to wound healing. While many of these materials may be derived from natural sources, some may be synthesized by molecular biological recombinant techniques and others may be synthetic in origin.

Peptides may be prepared by a variety of different combinatorial chemistry techniques as are now known in the art. Targeting ligands derived or modified from human leukocyte 10 origin, such as CD11a/CD18, and leukocyte cell surface glycoprotein (LFA-1), may also be used as these are known to bind to the endothelial cell receptor ICAM-1. The cytokine inducible member of the immunoglobulin superfamily, VCAM-1, which is mononuclear leukocyte-selective, may also be used as a targeting ligand. VLA-4, derived from human monocytes, may be used to target VCAM-1. Antibodies and other targeting ligands may 15 be employed to target endoglin, which is an endothelial cell proliferation marker.

Endoglin is upregulated on endothelial cells in miscellaneous solid tumors. A targeting ligand which may be used to target endoglin is the antibody TEC-11. Thorpe et al, *Breast Cancer Research and Treatment*, 36:237-51 (1995).

As with the endothelial cells discussed above, a wide variety of peptides, proteins and 20 antibodies may be employed as targeting ligands for targeting epithelial cells. Preferably, a peptide, including synthetic, semi-synthetic or naturally-occurring peptides, with high affinity to the epithelial cell target receptor may be selected, with synthetic peptides being more preferred. In connection with these preferred embodiments, peptides having from about 5 to about 15 amino acid residues are preferred. Antibodies may be used as whole 25 antibody or antibody fragments, for example, Fab or Fab'2, either of natural or recombinant origin. The antibodies of natural origin may be of animal or human origin, or may be chimeric (mouse/human). Human recombinant or chimeric antibodies are preferred and fragments are preferred to whole antibody.

Examples of monoclonal antibodies which may be employed as targeting ligands in the 30 present compositions include CALAM 27, which is formed by immunizing BALB/c mice with whole human squamous cell carcinoma of the tongue and forming hybridomas by crossing extracted spleen cells with those of an NS1 syngeneic myeloma cell line.

- 69 -

Gioanni, et al., *Cancer Research*, 47: 4417-4424 (1987). CALAM 27 is directed to surface epitopes of both normal and malignant epithelial cells. Normal lymph nodes generally do not contain cells expressing these epitopes. See *Cancer Research*, 47:4417-4424 (1987). Accordingly, lipid and/or vesicle compositions comprising this antibody can be used to target metastases in the lymph nodes. The monoclonal antibody 3C2 may be employed as a targeting ligand for targeting malignant epithelial cells of serious ovarian carcinoma and endometroid carcinoma. Another exemplary targeting ligand is Mab 4C7 (see *Cancer Research*, 45:2358-2362 (1985)), which may be used to target mucinous carcinoma, endometroid carcinoma and mesonephroid carcinoma. For targeting squamous cell carcinoma in head and neck cancer, Mab E48 (*Biological Abstract*, Vol. 099 Issue 066 Ref. 082748) may be used as a targeting ligand. For targeting malignant melanoma, the monoclonal antibody 225.28s (*Pathol. Biol.*, 38 (8):866-869 (1990)) may be employed. The monoclonal antibody mAb2E<sub>1</sub>, which is targeted to EPR-1 (effector cell protease 1), may also be used.

Targeting ligands may be selected for targeting antigens, including antigens associated with breast cancer, such as epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), fibroblast growth factor receptor, erbB2/HER-2 and tumor associated carbohydrate antigens (*Cancer*, 74 (3):1006-12 (1994)). CTA 16.88, homologous to cytokeratins 8, 18 and 19, is expressed by most epithelial-derived tumors, including carcinomas of the colon, pancreas, breast, ovary and lung. Thus, antibodies directed to these cytokeratins, such as 16.88 (IgM) and 88BV59 (IgG3k), which recognize different epitopes on CTA 16.88 (*Semin. Nucl. Med.*, 23 (2):165-79 (1993)), may be employed as targeting ligands. For targeting colon cancer, anti-CEA IgG Fab' fragments may be employed as targeting ligands. Chemically conjugated bispecific anti-cell surface antigen, anti-hapten Fab'-Fab antibodies may also be used as targeting ligands. The MG series monoclonal antibodies may be selected for targeting, for example, gastric cancer (*Chin. Med. Sci. J.*, 6 (1):56-59 (1991)).

There are a variety of cell surface epitopes on epithelial cells for which targeting ligands may be selected. For example, the protein human papilloma virus (HPV) has been associated with benign and malignant epithelial proliferations in skin and mucosa. Two HPV oncogenic proteins, E6 and E7, may be targeted as these may be expressed in certain epithelial derived cancers, such as cervical carcinoma. See *Curr. Opin. Immunol.*, 6 (5):746-54 (1994). Membrane receptors for peptide growth factors (PGF-R), which are

- 70 -

involved in cancer cell proliferation, may also be selected as tumor antigens. *Anticancer Drugs*, 5(4):379-93 (1994). Also, epidermal growth factor (EGF) and interleukin-2 may be targeted with suitable targeting ligands, including peptides, which bind these receptors. Certain melanoma associated antigens (MAA), such as epidermal growth factor receptor 5 (EGFR) and adhesion molecules (*Tumor Biol.*, 15 (4):188-202 (1994)), which are expressed by malignant melanoma cells, can be targeted with the compositions provided herein. The tumor associated antigen FAB-72 on the surface of carcinoma cells may also be selected as a target.

A wide variety of targeting ligands may be selected for targeting myocardial cells.

- 10 Exemplary targeting ligands include, for example, anticardiomysin antibody, which may comprise polyclonal antibody, Fab'2 fragments, or be of human origin, animal origin, for example, mouse origin, or of chimeric origin. Additional targeting ligands include dipyridamole; digitalis; nifedipine; apolipoprotein; low density lipoproteins (LDL), including  $\alpha$ -LDL, vLDL and methyl LDL; ryanodine; endothelin; complement receptor 15 type 1; IgG Fc; beta 1-adrenergic; dihydropyridine; adenosine; mineralocorticoid; nicotinic acetylcholine and muscarinic acetylcholine; antibodies to the human alpha 1A-adrenergic receptor; bioactive agents, such as drugs, including the alpha 1-antagonist prazosin; antibodies to the anti-beta-receptor; drugs which bind to the anti-beta-receptor; anti-cardiac RyR antibodies; endothelin-1, which is an endothelial cell-derived 20 vasoconstrictor peptide that exerts a potent positive inotropic effect on cardiac tissue (endothelin-1 binds to cardiac sarcolemmal vesicles); monoclonal antibodies which may be generated to the T-cell receptor  $\alpha$  - $\beta$  receptor and thereby employed to generate targeting ligands; the complement inhibitor sCR1; drugs, peptides or antibodies which are generated to the dihydropyridine receptor; monoclonal antibodies directed towards the 25 anti-interleukin-2 receptor may be used as targeting ligands to direct the present compositions to areas of myocardial tissue which express this receptor and which may be up-regulated in conditions of inflammation; cyclosporine for directing similarly the compositions to areas of inflamed myocardial tissue; methylisobutyl isonitrile; lectins which bind to specific sugars on membranes of cardiac myocytes and cardiac endothelial 30 cells; adrenomedullin (ADM), which is an endogenous hypotensive and vasorelaxing peptide; atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP); C-type natriuretic peptide (CNP), which is a 22 amino acid peptide of endothelial cell origin and is structurally related to atrial natriuretic

peptide but genetically distinct, and possesses vasoactive and antimitogenic activity; vasonatrin peptide (VNP) which is a chimera of atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP) and C-type natriuretic peptide (CNP) and comprises 27 amino acids; thrombin; endothelium-derived relaxing factor (EDRF); neutral endopeptidase 1 (NEP- 1); competitive inhibitors 5 to EDRF, including, for example, NG-monomethyl-L-arginine (L-NMMA); potassium channel antagonists, such as charybdotoxin and glibenclamide; antiheart antibodies, which may be identified in patients with idiopathic dilated cardiomyopathy but which preferably do not elicit cytolysis in the myocardium; antibodies directed against the adenine nucleotide translocator, the branched-chain keto acid dehydrogenase or cardiac myosin; 10 specific antagonists for the endothelin-A receptor, which may be referred to as BQ-123; and antibodies to the angiotensin II receptor.

Two of the major antigens of heart sarcolemma are calcium binding glycoproteins which copurify with the dihydropyridine receptor. Antisera may be raised, including polyclonal or monoclonal antibodies, against purified sarcolemma. These antibodies may also be 15 employed as targeted ligands. Purified fractions of the calcium binding glycoproteins may be isolated from the plasma membranes of the sarcolemma and then used to generate antibodies. ANP, which, as noted above, may be used as a targeting ligand, can be obtained from cultures of human aortic endothelial cells. ANP is generally localized in endothelium, but also may localize to the endothelial or myocardial tissue. ANP may be 20 prepared, for example, using recombinant techniques, as well as by synthesis of the peptide using peptide synthesis techniques well known to those skilled in the art. It is also possible to use an antibody, either polyclonal or monoclonal, directed towards ANP. Similarly, a peptide directed to ANP may be used for targeting endothelial and/or 25 myocardial cells. Both the  $\beta$  and  $\alpha$  forms of atrial natriuretic factor may be used as potential targeting ligands for directing the present compositions to myocardial tissue.

A preferred embodiment of the present invention involves the selective targeting of prodrugs to lymphocytes. The prodrug can be incorporated into a delivery vehicle or may be used by itself for targeting to lymphocytes. Preferably a delivery vehicle is used and the preferred delivery vehicle comprises a stabilizing material, such as an emulsion or a 30 gas-filled vesicle, more preferably a gas-filled liposome. Additionally, a targeting ligand may be incorporated into the delivery vehicle.

- 72 -

The targeting ligand is preferably covalently bound to the surface of the delivery vehicle by a spacer including, for example, hydrophilic polymers, preferably polyethylene glycol. Preferred molecular weights of the polymers are from 1000 da to 10,000 da, with 500 da being most preferred. Preferably the polymer is bifunctional with the targeting ligand

5 bound to a terminus of the polymer. Generally, the targeting ligand will range from 0.1 to 20 mole percent of the exterior components of the vesicle. In the case of gas-filled lipid vesicles, this amount is preferably between 0.5 and 10 mole percent with 1 to 10 percent most preferred. The exact ratio will depend upon the particular targeting ligand.

In one embodiment of the invention, the targeting ligands are directed toward

10 lymphocytes which may be T-cells or B-cells, with T-cells being the preferred target. Depending on the targeting ligand, the prodrug delivery vehicle may be targeted to one or more classes or clones of T-cells.

To select a class of targeted lymphocytes, a targeting ligand having specific affinity for that class is employed. For example, an anti CD-4 antibody can be used for selecting the

15 class of T-cells harboring CD-4 receptors, an anti CD-8 antibody can be used for selecting the class of T-cells harboring CD-8 receptors, an anti CD-34 antibody can be used for selecting the class of T-cells harboring CD-34 receptors, etc. A lower molecular weight ligand is preferably employed, e.g., Fab or a peptide fragment. For example, an OKT3 antibody or OKT3 antibody fragment may be used.

20 When a receptor for a class of T-cells or clones of T-cells is selected, the prodrug will be delivered to that class of cells. Using HLA-derived peptides, for example, will allow selection of targeted clones of cells expressing reactivity to HLA proteins.

The ultimate purpose of the linkage between the targeting ligand and the target may be the delivery of the prodrug to the cell for endocytosis or fusion. Although not intending to

25 be bound by any particular theory of operation, once the delivery vehicle has linked to its target, the prodrug may gain access to the interior of the target cell either through a fusion-initiated capping and patching mechanism, the intervention of clathrin-coated pits or through classical endocytosis, depending on the mechanisms for engulfment peculiar to the target cell, or by other natural or induced means. The bioactive agent (prodrug) then

30 stimulates programmed cell death (apoptosis) through its well-established cytotoxicity. One skilled in the art will recognize the potential for other such targeted uses of bioactive agents which gain access to the target cells or tissue via ligand-receptor binding.

- 73 -

The following table illustrates ligands from the MHC (major histocompatibility complex) and their receptors in the class of T-cells for which they have affinity. All the ligands, T-cell receptors and peptide sequences below may be used in the present invention.

5

TABLE 2: MHC LIGANDS AND T-CELL RECEPTORS

| T-Cell Receptor | Ligand                       | Peptide Sequence               |                   |
|-----------------|------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------|
| HTB157.7        | K <sup>b</sup> (Q10b hybrid) | Heterogeneous                  |                   |
| HTB157.7        | pK <sup>b</sup> 163-174      | NA                             |                   |
| 2C              | L <sup>d</sup> /p2Ca         | LSPFPFDL*                      |                   |
| 10              | 2C                           | L <sup>d</sup> /p2Ca-A5        | LSPFAFDL          |
| 2C              | L <sup>d</sup> /p2Ca-A3      | LSAfpfdl                       |                   |
| 2C              | L <sup>d</sup> /p2Ca-A8      | LSPFPFDA                       |                   |
| 2C              | L <sup>d</sup> /SL9          | SPFPFDLL                       |                   |
| 15              | 2C                           | K <sup>b</sup> /p2Ca           | LSPFPFDL          |
| 2C              | L <sup>d</sup> /QL9          | QLSPSPDL                       |                   |
| 4G3             | K <sup>b</sup> /pOV8         | SIINFEKL                       |                   |
| 2C              | L <sup>d</sup> /p2Ca-Y4      | LSPYPFDL                       |                   |
| 2C              | L <sup>d</sup> /p2Ca-A1      | ASPFPFDL                       |                   |
| 20              | Clone 30                     | K <sup>b</sup> /IgG (bivalent) | Heterogeneous     |
| 14.3d           | 1-E <sup>d</sup> /pHA        | SSFGAFGIFPK                    |                   |
| SC.C7           | 1-E <sup>k</sup> /MCC        | ANERADLIAYLKQATK               |                   |
| 228.4           | 1-E <sup>k</sup> /MCC-K99A   | ANERADLIAYLKQATK               |                   |
| 2B4             | 1-E <sup>k</sup> /MCC        | ANERADLIAYLKQATK               |                   |
| 25              | 2B4                          | 1-E <sup>k</sup> /PCC          | ANERADLIAYLKQATAK |
| 2B4             | 1-E <sup>k</sup> /MCC-T102S  | ANERADLIAYLKQASK               |                   |
| HA1.7           | SEB                          |                                |                   |
| 14.3d β         | SEC1                         |                                |                   |
| 14.3d β         | SEC2                         |                                |                   |
| 14.3d β         | SEC3                         |                                |                   |
| 30              | 14.3d β                      | SEB                            |                   |
| 14.3d β         | SPEA                         |                                |                   |

- 74 -

\* Single-letter code for amino acids. From Fremont et al, *Current Opinion In Immunology*, (1996) 8:93-100, page 96, Table 2, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Another major area for targeted prodrug delivery involves the interleukin-2 (IL-2) system. IL-2 is a t-cell growth factor produced following antigen or mitogen induced stimulation of lymphoid cells. Among the cell types which produce IL-2 are CD4<sup>+</sup> and CD8<sup>+</sup> t-cells and large granular lymphocytes, as well as certain t-cell tumors. IL-2 receptors are glycoproteins expressed on responsive cells. They are notable in connection with the present invention because they are readily endocytosed into lysosomal inclusions when bound to IL-2. The ultimate effect of this endocytosis depends on the target cell, but among the notable *in vivo* effects are regression of transplantable murine tumors, human melanoma or renal cell cancer. IL-2 has also been implicated in antibacterial and antiviral therapies and plays a role in allograft rejection. In addition to IL-2 receptors, preferred targets include the anti-IL-2 receptor antibody, natural IL-2 and an IL-2 fragment of a 20-mer peptide or smaller generated by phage display which binds to the IL-2 receptor.

Although not intending to be bound by any particular theory of operation, IL-2 may be conjugated to the prodrugs and/or other delivery vehicles and thus mediate the targeting of cells bearing IL-2 receptors. Endocytosis of the ligand-receptor complex would then deliver the bioactive agent to the targeted cell, thereby inducing its death through apoptosis -- independent and superceding any proliferative or activating effect which IL-2 would promote alone.

Additionally, an IL-2 peptide fragment which has binding affinity for IL-2 receptors can be incorporated either by direct attachment to a reactive moiety on the prodrug or via a spacer or linker molecule with a reactive end such as an amine, hydroxyl, or carboxylic acid functional group. Such linkers are well known in the art and may comprise from 3 to 20 amino acid residues. Alternatively, D-amino acids or derivatized amino acids may be used which avoid proteolysis in the target tissue.

Still other systems which can be used in the present invention include IgM-mediated endocytosis in B-cells or a variant of the ligand-receptor interactions described above wherein the T-cell receptor is CD2 and the ligand is lymphocyte function-associated antigen 3 (LFA-3), as described, for example, by Wallner et al, *J. Experimental Med.*,

166:923-932 (1987), the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference herein in its entirety.

The targeting ligand may be incorporated in the present stabilizing materials in a variety of ways. Generally speaking, the targeting ligand may be incorporated in the present stabilizing materials by being associated covalently or non-covalently with one or more of the stabilizing materials which are included in the compositions including, for example, the prodrugs, lipids, proteins, polymers, surfactants, and/or auxiliary stabilizing materials. In preferred form, the targeting ligand may be associated covalently with one or more of the aforementioned materials contained in the present stabilizing materials. Preferred stabilizing materials of the present invention comprise prodrugs, lipid, protein, polymer or surfactant compounds. In these compositions, the targeting ligands are preferably associated covalently with the prodrug, lipid, protein, polymer or surfactant compounds.

Exemplary covalent bonds by which the targeting ligands are associated with the stabilizing materials, including prodrugs, lipids, proteins, polymers, surfactants and/or vesicles include, for example, amide (-CONH-); thioamide (-CSNH-); ether (ROR'), where R and R' may be the same or different and are other than hydrogen); ester (-COO-); thioester (-COS-); -O-; -S-; -S<sub>n</sub>-, where n is greater than 1, preferably about 2 to about 8, and more preferably about 2; carbamates; -NH-; -NR-, where R is alkyl, for example, alkyl of from 1 to about 4 carbons; urethane; and substituted imidate; and combinations of two or more of these. Covalent bonds between targeting ligands and, for example, lipids, may be achieved through the use of molecules that may act as spacers to increase the conformational and topographical flexibility of the ligand. Examples of such spacers include, for example, succinic acid, 1,6-hexanedioic acid, 1,8-octanedioic acid, and the like, as well as modified amino acids, such as, for example, 6-aminohexanoic acid, 4-aminobutanoic acid, and the like. In addition, in the case of targeting ligands which comprise peptide moieties, sidechain-to-sidechain crosslinking may be complemented with sidechain-to-end crosslinking and/or end-to-end crosslinking. Also, small spacer molecules, such as dimethylsuberimidate, may be used to accomplish similar objectives. The use of agents, including those used in Schiff's base-type reactions, such as gluteraldehyde, may also be employed. The Schiff's base linkages, which may be reversible linkages, can be rendered more permanent covalent linkages via the use of

reductive amination procedures. This may involve, for example, chemical reducing agents, such as lithium aluminum hydride reducing agents or their milder analogs, including lithium aluminum diisobutyl hydride (DIBAL), sodium borohydride ( $\text{NaBH}_4$ ) or sodium cyanoborohydride ( $\text{NaBH}_3\text{CN}$ ).

- 5     The covalent linking of the targeting ligands to the stabilizing materials in the present compositions, including the prodrugs, lipids, proteins, polymers and/or surfactants, may be accomplished using synthetic organic techniques which would be readily apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art in view of the present disclosure. For example, the targeting ligands may be linked to the stabilizing materials via the use of well known coupling or  
10 activation agents. As known to the skilled artisan, activating agents are generally electrophilic, which can be employed to elicit the formation of a covalent bond. Exemplary activating agents which may be used include, for example, carbonyldiimidazole (CDI), dicyclohexylcarbo-diimide (DCC), diisopropylcarbodiimide (DIC), methyl sulfonyl chloride, Castro's Reagent, and diphenyl phosphoryl chloride.
- 15    The covalent bonds may involve crosslinking and/or polymerization. Crosslinking preferably refers to the attachment of two chains of polymer molecules by bridges, composed of either an element, a group, or a compound, which join certain carbon atoms of the chains by covalent chemical bonds. For example, crosslinking may occur in polypeptides which are joined by the disulfide bonds of the cystine residue. Crosslinking  
20 may be achieved, for example, by (1) adding a chemical substance (crosslinking agent) and exposing the mixture to heat, or (2) subjecting a polymer to high energy radiation. A variety of crosslinking agents, or "tethers", of different lengths and/or functionalities are described, for example, in R.L. Lunblad, *Techniques in Protein Modification*, CRC Press, Inc., Ann Arbor, MI, pp. 249-68 (1995), the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated  
25 herein by reference in its entirety. Exemplary crosslinkers include, for example, 3,3'-dithiobis(succinimidyl-propionate), dimethyl suberimidate, and its variations thereof, based on hydrocarbon length, and bis-N-maleimido-1,8-octane.
- In accordance with preferred embodiments, the targeting ligands may be linked or attached to the prodrugs, lipids, proteins, polymers, or surfactants or other stabilizing  
30 materials via a linking group. A variety of linking groups are available and would be apparent to one skilled in the art in view of the present disclosure. Preferably, the linking group comprises a hydrophilic polymer. Suitable hydrophilic linker polymers include, for

example, polyalkyleneoxides such as, for example, polyethylene glycol (PEG) and polypropylene glycol (PPG), polyvinylpyrrolidones, polyvinylmethylethers, polyacrylamides, such as, for example, polymethacrylamides, polydimethylacrylamides and polyhydroxypropylmethacrylamides, polyhydroxyethyl acrylates, polyhydroxypropyl methacrylates, polymethyloxazolines, polyethyloxazolines, polyhydroxyethyloxazolines, polyhydroxypropyloxazolines, polyvinyl alcohols, polyphosphazenes, poly(hydroxy-alkylcarboxylic acids), polyoxazolidines, polyaspartamide, and polymers of sialic acid (polysialics). The hydrophilic polymers are preferably selected from the group consisting of PEG, PPG, polyvinylalcohol and polyvinylpyrrolidone and copolymers thereof, with

10 PEG and PPG polymers being more preferred and PEG polymers being even more preferred. Thus, in embodiments involving lipid compositions which comprise lipids bearing polymers including, for example, DPPE-PEG, the targeting ligand may be linked directly to the polymer which is attached to the lipid to provide, for example, a conjugate of DPPE-PEG-TL, where TL is a targeting ligand. Thus, using the example DPPE-PEG,

15 such as, for example, DPPE-PEG5000, the aforementioned conjugate may be represented as DPPE-PEG5000-TL. The hydrophilic polymer used as a linking group is preferably a bifunctional polymer, for example, bifunctional PEG, such as diamino-PEG. In this case, one end of the PEG group is linked, for example, to a lipid compound, and is bound at the free end to the targeting ligand via an amide linkage. A hydrophilic polymer, for example,

20 PEG, substituted with a terminal carboxylate group on one end and a terminal amino group on the other end, may also be used. These latter bifunctional hydrophilic polymer may be preferred since they possess various similarities to amino acids.

Standard peptide methodology may be used to link the targeting ligand to the lipid when utilizing linker groups having two unique terminal functional groups. Bifunctional

25 hydrophilic polymers, and especially bifunctional PEGs, may be synthesized using standard organic synthetic methodologies. In addition, many of these materials are available commercially, such as, for example,  $\alpha$ -amino- $\omega$ -carboxy-PEG which is commercially available from Shearwater Polymers (Huntsville, AL). An advantage of using a PEG material as the linking group is that the size of the PEG can be varied such

30 that the number of monomeric subunits of ethylene glycol may be as few as, for example, about 5, or as many as, for example, about 500 or even greater. Accordingly, the "tether" or length of the linkage may be varied, as desired. This may be important depending, for

example, on the particular targeting ligand employed. For example, a targeting ligand which comprises a large protein molecule may require a short tether, such that it will simulate a membrane bound protein. A short tether would also allow for a vesicle to maintain a close proximity to the cell. This can be used advantageously in connection  
5 with vesicles which also comprise a bioactive agent, including a prodrug, in that the concentration of bioactive agent or prodrug which is delivered to the cell may be advantageously increased. Another suitable linking group which may provide a short tether is glyceraldehyde. Glyceraldehyde may be bound, for example, to DPPE via a Schiff's base reaction. Subsequent Amadori rearrangement can provide a substantially  
10 short linking group. The  $\beta$  carbonyl of the Schiff's base may then react with a lysine or arginine of the targeting protein or peptide to form the targeted lipid.

More specifically, the compounds employed in the present stabilizing materials, including prodrugs, lipids, proteins, polymers and/or surfactants, may contain various functional groups, such as, for example, hydroxy, thio and amine groups, which can react  
15 with a carboxylic acid or carboxylic acid derivative of the hydrophilic polymeric linker using suitable coupling conditions which would be apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art in view of the present disclosure. After the carboxylic acid group (or derivative thereof) reacts with the functional group, for example, hydroxy, thio or amine group to form an ester, thioester or amide group, any protected functional group may be  
20 deprotected utilizing procedures which would be well known to those skilled in the art. The term protecting group refers to any moiety which may be used to block the reaction of a functional group and which may be removed, as desired, to afford the unprotected functional group. Any of a variety of protecting groups may be employed and these will vary depending, for example, as to whether the group to be protected is an amine,  
25 hydroxyl or carboxyl moiety. If the functional group is a hydroxyl group, suitable protecting groups include, for example, certain ethers, esters and carbonates. Such protecting groups are described, for example, in Greene, TW and Wuts, PGM "Protective Groups in Organic Synthesis" John Wiley, New York, 2nd Edition (1991), the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. Exemplary protecting  
30 groups for amine groups include, for example, t-butyloxycarbonyl (Boc), allyloxycarbonyl (Alloc), benzyloxycarbonyl (Cbz), o-nitrobenzyloxycarbonyl and trifluoroacetate (TFA).

Amine groups which may be present, for example, on a backbone of a polymer which is included in the vesicles, may be coupled to amine groups on a hydrophilic linking polymer by forming a Schiff's base, for example, by using coupling agents, such as glutaraldehyde. An example of this coupling is described by Allcock et al, *Macromolecules*, 19(6):1502-5 1508 (1986), the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. If, for example, vesicles are formulated from polylysine, free amino groups may be exposed on the surface of the vesicles, and these free amine groups may be activated as described above. The activated amine groups can be used, in turn, to couple to a functionalized hydrophilic polymer, such as, for example,  $\alpha$ -amino- $\omega$ -hydroxy-PEG in 10 which the  $\omega$ -hydroxy group has been protected with a carbonate group. After the reaction is completed, the carbonate group can be cleaved, thereby enabling the terminal hydroxy group to be activated for reaction to a suitable targeting ligand. In certain embodiments, the surface of a vesicle may be activated, for example, by displacing chlorine atoms in chlorine-containing phosphazene residues, such as polydichlorophosphazene. Subsequent 15 addition of a targeting ligand and quenching of the remaining chloride groups with water or aqueous methanol will yield the coupled product.

In addition, poly(diphenoxypyrophosphazene) can be synthesized (Allcock et al, *Macromolecules*, 19(6):1502-1508 (1986)) and immobilized, for example, on DPPE, followed by nitration of the phenoxy moieties by the addition of a mixture of nitric acid 20 and acetic anhydride. The subsequent nitro groups may then be activated, for example, by (1) treatment with cyanogen bromide in 0.1 M phosphate buffer (pH 11), followed by addition of a targeting ligand containing a free amino moiety to generate a coupled urea analog, (2) formation of a diazonium salt using sodium nitrite/HCl, followed by addition of the targeting ligand to form a coupled ligand, and/or (3) the use of a dialdehyde, for 25 example, glutaraldehyde as described above, to form a Schiff's base. After linking the DPPE to the hydrophilic polymer and the targeting ligand, the vesicles may be formulated utilizing the procedures described herein.

Aldehyde groups on polymers can be coupled with amines as described above by forming a Schiff's base. An example of this coupling procedure is described in Allcock 30 and Austin, *Macromolecules*, 14:1616 (1981), the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

- 80 -

- In the above procedures, the polymer or terminus of the lipid, for example, phosphatidylglycerol or phosphatidylethanolamine, is preferably activated and coupled to the hydrophilic polymeric linker, the terminus of which has been blocked in a suitable manner. As an example of this strategy,  $\alpha$ -amino- $\omega$ -carboxy-PEG4000 having a t-Boc 5 protected terminal amino group and a free carboxylate end, may be activated with 1,1'-carbonyldiimidazole in the presence of hydroxybenzotriazole in N-methylpyrrolidone. After the addition of phosphatidylethanolamine, the t-Boc group may be removed by using trifluoroacetic acid (TFA), leaving the free amine. The amine may then be reacted with a targeting ligand which may comprise, for example, a peptide, protein, alkaloid, or other 10 moiety, by similar activation of the ligand, to provide the lipid-linker-targeting ligand conjugate. Other strategies, in addition to those exemplified above, may be utilized to prepare the lipid-linker-targeting ligand conjugates. Generally speaking, these methods employ synthetic strategies which are generally known to one skilled in the art of synthetic organic chemistry.
- 15 As known to one of ordinary skill in the art, immunoglobulins typically comprise a flexible region which is identified as the "hinge" region. See, e.g., "Concise Encyclopedia of Biochemistry", Second Edition, Walter de Gruyter & Co., pp. 282-283 (1988). Fab' fragments can be linked to the lipids, polymers, proteins and/or vesicles using the well-defined sites of the thiols of the hinge region. This is a preferred region for coupling Fab' 20 fragments as the potential binding site is remote from the antigen-recognition site. Generally speaking, it may be difficult to utilize the thiols of the hinge group unless they are adequately prepared. In particular, as outlined by Shahinian and Salvias (*Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, 1239:157-167 (1995)) it may be important to reduce the thiol groups so that they are available for coupling, for example, to maleimide derivatized linking 25 groups. Examples of reducing agents commonly used are ethanedithiol, mercaptoethanol, mercaptoethylamine or the more commonly used dithiothreitol, commonly referred to as Cleland's reagent. However, it should be noted that care should be exercised when utilizing certain reducing agents, such as dithiothreitol, as overreduction may result. Discriminating use of reducing agents may be necessary in connection with proteins 30 whose activity or binding capacity may be compromised due to overreduction and subsequent denaturation or conformational change. See, e.g., Shahinian, et al, *Biochim.*

- 81 -

*Biophys. Acta*, 1239:157-167 (1995), the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

F(ab')<sub>2</sub> antibody fragments may be prepared by incubating the antibodies with pepsin (60 $\mu$ g/ml) in 0.1 M sodium acetate (pH 4.2) for 4 h at 37°C. Digestion may be terminated

- 5 by adding 2 M Tris (pH 8.8) to a final concentration of 80 mM. The F(ab')<sub>2</sub> fragments may then be obtained by centrifugation (10,000 x g, 30 min, 4°C). The supernatant may then be dialyzed at 4°C against 150 mM NaCl, 20 mM phosphate at pH 7.0. This may then be chromatographed on a column of Protein A-Sepharose CL-4B to remove any undigested IgG. The Fab' fragments may then be prepared by extensively degassing the
- 10 solutions and purging with nitrogen prior to use. The F(ab')<sub>2</sub> fragments may be provided at a concentration of 5 mg/ml and reduced under argon in 30 mM cysteine. Alternatively, cysteamine may be employed. 100 mM Tris, pH 7.6 may be used as a buffer for 15 min at 37°C. The solutions may then be diluted 2-fold with an equal volume of the appropriate experimental buffer and spun through a 0.4 ml spin column of Bio-Gel P-6DG. The
- 15 resulting Fab' fragments may be more efficient in their coupling to maleimide linkers.

Note also that the same procedure may be employed with other macromolecules containing cysteine residues for coupling, for example, to the maleimide spacers. Also, peptides may be utilized provided that they contain a cysteine residue. If the peptides have not been made fresh and there is a possibility of oxidation of cysteine residues within

- 20 the peptide structure, it may be necessary to regenerate the thiol group using the approach outlined above.

Additional linkers would include other derivatives of lipids useful for coupling to a bifunctional spacer. For example, phosphatidylethanolamine (PE) may be coupled to a bifunctional agent. For example N-succinimidyl 4-(p-maleimido-phenyl)butyrate (SMPB)

- 25 and N-succinimidyl 3-(2-pyridylthio) propionate (SPDP), N-succinimidyl trans-4-(N-maleimidylmethyl)cyclohexane-1-carboxylate (SMCC), and N-succinimidyl 3-maleimidylbenzoate (SMB) may be used among others, to produce, for example the functionalized lipids MPB-PE and PDP-PE.

The free end of the hydrophilic spacer, such as polyethylene glycol ethylamine, which

- 30 contains a reactive group, such as an amine or hydroxyl group, could be used to bind a cofactor or other targeting ligand. For example, polyethylene glycol ethylamine may be reacted with N-succinimidylbiotin or p-nitrophenylbiotin to introduce onto the spacer a

- 82 -

useful coupling group. For example, biotin may be coupled to the spacer and this will readily bind non-covalently proteins. As an example, MPB-PEG-DPPE may be synthesized as follows. DPPE-PEG with a free amino group at the terminus of the PEG will be provided as described previously. Synthesis of the SMPB:PEG-DPPE may then be carried out with 1 equivalent of triethylamine in chloroform at a molar ratio of 1:5 SMPB:DPPE-PEG. After 3 hours, the reaction mixture will be evaporated to dryness under argon. Excess unreacted SMPB and major by products will be removed by preparative thin layer chromatography (TLC, silica gel developed with 50% acetone in chloroform). The upper portion of the lipid band can be extracted from the silica with about 20-30% methanol in chloroform (V:V) resulting in the isolation of pure intact MPB-Peg-DPPE. Streptavidin may then be coupled to proteins so that the proteins in turn may then be coupled to the MPB-PEG-DPPE. Briefly SPDP would be incubated with streptavidin at room temperature for 30 minutes and chromatography employed to remove unreacted SPDP. Dithiothreitol (DTT) was added to the reaction mixture and 10 minutes later 2-thiopyridone at a concentration of 343 nM. The remainder of the reaction mixture is reduced with DTT (25 mM for 10 min.). The thiolated product is isolated by gel exclusion. The resulting streptavidin labeled proteins may then be used to bind to the biotinylated spacers affixed to the lipid moieties.

In preferred embodiments of the present invention, the targeted compounds, namely, targeted stabilizing materials, including prodrugs, lipids, proteins, polymers and surfactants, are incorporated in compositions which are used to form targeted emulsions and/or targeted vesicles, including, for example, targeted emulsions, targeted micelles, targeted liposomes, targeted albumin coated microspheres, and/or targeted polymer coated microspheres. The targeting ligand which is attached to the compounds from which the vesicles are prepared may be directed, for example, outwardly from the surface of the vesicle. Thus, there is provided a targeted vesicle which can be used to target receptors and tissues.

In certain embodiments, the targeting ligands may be incorporated in the present stabilizing materials via non-covalent associations. As known to those skilled in the art, non-covalent association is generally a function of a variety of factors, including, for example, the polarity of the involved molecules, the charge (positive or negative), if any, of the involved molecules, the extent of hydrogen bonding through the molecular network,

- 83 -

and the like. Non-covalent bonds are preferably selected from the group consisting of ionic interaction, dipole-dipole interaction, hydrogen bonds, hydrophilic interactions, van der Waal's forces, and any combinations thereof. Non-covalent interactions may be employed to bind the targeting ligand to the lipid, or directly to the surface of a vesicle.

- 5 For example, the amino acid sequence Gly-Gly-His may be bound to the surface of a vesicle, preferably by a linker, such as PEG, and copper, iron or vanadyl ion may then be added. Proteins, such as antibodies which contain histidine residues, may then bind to the vesicle via an ionic bridge with the copper ion, as described in U.S. Patent No. 5,466,467, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. An  
10 example of hydrogen bonding involves cardiolipin lipids which can be incorporated into the lipid compositions.

In preferred embodiments of the present invention, which may involve vesicles, changes, for example, in pH and/or temperature *in vivo*, may be employed to promote a change in location in the targeting ligands, for example, from a location within the vesicle, to a  
15 location external to the outer wall of the vesicle. This may promote binding of the targeting ligands to targeting sites, for example, receptors, such as lymphocytes, and tissues, including myocardial, endothelial and epithelial cells, since the targeting ligand has a greater likelihood of exposure to such targeting sites. In addition, high energy ultrasound can be used to promote rupturing of the vesicles. This can also expose the  
20 targeting ligand to the desired binding site.

As an example, a targeting ligand incorporated into the compositions of the present invention may be of the formula:

L-P-T

where L is a prodrug, lipid, protein, polymer, carbohydrate, surfactant or the like; P is a  
25 hydrophilic polymer; and T is a targeting ligand.

In a preferred embodiment, L is a lipid selected from the group consisting of lecithins, phosphatidylcholines, phosphatidylserines, phosphatidylinositols, cardiolipins, cholesterol, cholesterolamines, lysophosphatides, erythrosphingosines, sphingomyelins, ceramides, cerebrosides, saturated phospholipids, unsaturated phospholipids, and krill  
30 phospholipids, more preferably, L is selected from the group consisting of lecithins, phosphatidylcholines, phosphatidylserines and phosphatidylinositols. In other preferred embodiments, L is a lipid selected from the group consisting of 1,2-diacyl-sn-glycero-

- 84 -

- 3-phosphocholines, 1,2-diacyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphoethanolamines, 1,2-diacyl-sn-glycero-3-[phospho-rac-(1-glycerols)], 1,2-diacyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphates, 1,2-diacyl-sn-glycero-3-[phosphoserines], lysophosphatidylcholines, lysophosphatidylglycerols, 1,2-diacyl-sn-glycerols, 1,2-diacyl-ethylene glycols, N-(n-caproylamine)-1,2-diacyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphoethanolamines, N-dodecanylamine-1,2-diacyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphoethanol-amines, N-succinyl-1,2-diacyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphoethanolamines, N-glutaryl-1,2-diacyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphoethanol-amines and N-dodecanyl-1,2-diacyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphoethanolamines, more preferably, L is selected from the group consisting of 1,2-diacyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphocholines, 1,2-diacyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphoethanolamines, 1,2-diacyl-sn-glycero-3-[phospho-rac-(1-glycerols)], 1,2-diacyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphates, 1,2-diacyl-sn-glycero-3-[phosphoserines], lysophosphatidylcholines, lysophosphatidyl-glycerols and 1,2-diacyl-sn-glycerols.
- In other preferred embodiments, L is a protein which comprises albumin.
- In still other preferred embodiments, L is a polymer which comprises synthetic polymers or copolymers prepared from monomers selected from the group consisting of acrylic acid, methacrylic acid, ethyleneimine, crotonic acid, acrylamide, ethyl acrylate, methyl methacrylate, 2-hydroxyethyl methacrylate, lactic acid, glycolic acid,  $\epsilon$ -caprolactone, acrolein, cyanoacrylate, bisphenol A, epichlorhydrin, hydroxyalkylacrylates, siloxane, dimethylsiloxane, ethylene oxide, propylene oxide, ethylene glycol, hydroxyalkylmethacrylates, N-substituted acrylamides, N-substituted methacrylamides, N-vinyl-2-pyrrolidone, 2,4-pentadiene-1-ol, vinyl acetate, acrylonitrile, styrene, p-amino-styrene, p-aminobenzyl-styrene, sodium styrene sulfonate, sodium 2-sulfoxyethylmeth-acrylate, vinyl pyridine, aminoethyl methacrylates, 2-methacryloyloxy-trimethylammonium chloride and polyphosphazene. Also preferred are compounds where L is a polymer which comprises synthetic polymers or copolymers selected from the group consisting of polyacrylic acid, polyethyleneimine, polymethacrylic acid, polymethylmeth-acrylate, polysiloxane, polydimethylsiloxane, polylactic acid, poly( $\epsilon$ -caprolactone), epoxy resin, poly(ethylene oxide), poly(propylene oxide), poly(ethylene glycol), polyamide, polyvinylidene-polyacrylonitrile, polyvinylidene-polyacrylonitrile-polymethylmethacrylate and polystyrene-polyacrylonitrile. Preferred among these polymers is polyvinylidene-polyacrylonitrile copolymer.

In other preferred embodiments, L is a surfactant, preferably a fluorosurfactant, and more preferably a fluorosurfactant having polyethylene glycol attached thereto.

In the above compounds, P is a hydrophilic polymer. Preferably, P is a hydrophilic polymer selected from the group consisting of polyalkyleneoxides, polyvinyl alcohol,

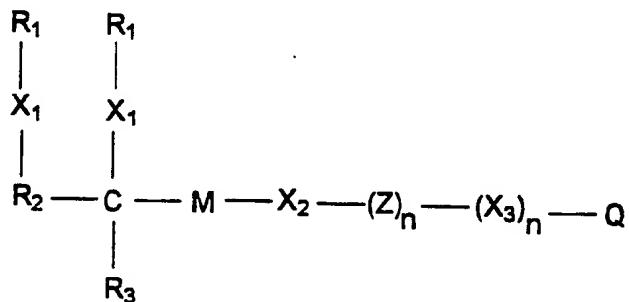
- 5 polyvinylpyrrolidones, polyacrylamides, polymethacrylamides, polyphosphazenes, phosphazene, poly(hydroxyalkylcarboxylic acids) and polyoxazolidines. More preferably, P is a polyalkyleneoxide polymer, with polyethylene glycol and polypropylene glycol being even more preferred and polyethylene glycol being particularly preferred.

In the above formula, T is a targeting ligand. Preferably, T is a targeting ligand which  
10 targets lymphocytes. Also in preferred embodiments, T is a targeting ligand selected from the group consisting of proteins, peptides, saccharides, steroids, steroid analogs, bioactive agents and genetic material, with proteins, peptides and saccharides being more preferred. Most preferred, T is a targeting ligand which targets T-cell receptors, B-cell receptors or IL-2 receptors.

- 15 In the case of targeting ligands which comprise saccharide groups, suitable saccharide moieties include, for example, monosaccharides, disaccharides and polysaccharides. Exemplary monosaccharides may have six carbon atoms and these saccharides include allose, altrose, glucose, dextrose, mannose, gulose, idose, galactose, talose, fructose, psicose, verbose and tagatose. Five carbon saccharides include ribose, arabinose, xylose,  
20 lyxose, ribulose and xylulose. Four carbon saccharides include erythrose, threose and erythrulose. Disaccharides include sucrose, lactose, maltose, isomaltose and cellobiose. Saccharide bearing targeting lipids may be synthesized through a multistep organic synthesis approach, as described more fully hereinafter. For example, lipids bearing targeting glucose moieties may be prepared by reacting, for example,  $\alpha$ -glucopyranosyl  
25 bromide tetrabenzyl with  $\omega$ -trifluoroacetylaminopoly-ethylene glycol to obtain  $\omega$ -glucopyranosyl tetrabenzyl- $\omega$ '-trifluoroacetylaminopolyethylene glycol. This may then be hydrolyzed in a sodium carbonate or potassium carbonate solution and then hydrogenated to obtain  $\omega$ -glucopyranosyl- $\omega$ 'amino-polyethylene glycol. Aminoglycopyranosyl terminated polyethylene glycol may then react with N-DPGS-succinimide to form the lipid  
30 bearing saccharide DPGS-NH-PEG-Glucose. In certain embodiments, the targeting ligands target cancer cells or tumor cells.

- 86 -

In another embodiment, the targeting ligand incorporated into the compositions of the present invention may be of the following formula, which falls within the scope of the compound of the formula L-P-T above:



- wherein each  $X_i$  is independently -O-, -S-, -SO-, -SO<sub>2</sub>-, -NR<sub>4</sub>-, -X<sub>4</sub>-C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-X<sub>4</sub>- or  
 5 -C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-; each of  $X_2$  and  $X_3$  is independently a direct bond, -R<sub>5</sub>-X<sub>4</sub>-C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-, -R<sub>5</sub>-C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-X<sub>4</sub>, -X<sub>4</sub>-C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-R<sub>5</sub>-, -C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-X<sub>4</sub>-R<sub>5</sub>-, -X<sub>4</sub>-R<sub>5</sub>-C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-X<sub>4</sub>-, -R<sub>5</sub>-X<sub>4</sub>-C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-R<sub>5</sub>-C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-X<sub>4</sub>- or  
 -R<sub>5</sub>-C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-X<sub>4</sub>-R<sub>5</sub>-X<sub>4</sub>-C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-; each  $X_4$  is independently -O-, -NR<sub>4</sub>- or -S-; each  $X_5$  is  
 10 independently O or S; M is -R<sub>5</sub>-X<sub>4</sub>-C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-, -R<sub>5</sub>-C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-X<sub>4</sub>-, -R<sub>5</sub>-X<sub>4</sub>-(YX<sub>5</sub>)P(=X<sub>5</sub>)-X<sub>4</sub>- or  
 -X<sub>4</sub>-(YX<sub>5</sub>)P(=X<sub>5</sub>)-X<sub>4</sub>-R<sub>5</sub>-, each n is, independently, 0 or 1; Y is hydrogen or a  
 pharmaceutical acceptable counter ion; Z is a hydrophilic polymer; Q is a targeting  
 15 ligand or a precursor to a targeting ligand; each R<sub>1</sub> is independently an alkyl group of 1 to  
 about 50 carbons that may optionally be substituted with one or more halogen atoms; each  
 R<sub>2</sub> is independently an alkylene group of 1 to about 30 carbons that may optionally be  
 substituted with one or more halogen atoms; each of R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> is independently hydrogen  
 20 or alkyl of 1 to about 10 carbons; and each R<sub>5</sub> is independently a direct bond or alkylene of  
 1 to about 30 carbons.

- In the above formula, it is intended that when any symbol appears more than once in a particular formula or substituent, its meaning in each instance is independent of the other.  
 20 Also in the above formula, it is intended that when each of two or more adjacent symbols is defined as being a "direct bond" to provide multiple, adjacent direct bonds, the multiple and adjacent direct bonds devolve into a single direct bond.
- In preferred embodiments, each  $X_i$  is independently -X<sub>4</sub>-C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-X<sub>4</sub>- or  
 -C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-, more preferably X<sub>4</sub>-C(=X<sub>5</sub>)- or -C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-X<sub>4</sub>-, even more preferably -C(=X<sub>5</sub>)-X<sub>4</sub>-,  
 25 for example, -C(=O)-O-.

- 87 -

- In preferred embodiments, each of  $X_2$  and  $X_3$  is independently a direct bond, - $R_5-X_4-C(=X_5)-$ , - $R_5-C(=X_5)-X_4$ , - $X_4-C(=X_5)-R_5-$ , - $C(=X_5)-X_4-R_5-$ , - $X_4-R_5-C(=X_5)-X_4-$  or - $R_5-X_4-C(=X_5)-R_5-C(=X_5)-X_4-$ , more preferably - $CH_2CH_2-C(=O)-NH-$  or - $CH_2CH_2-NH-C(=O)-CH_2CH_2-C(=O)-NH-$  and  $X_3$  is a direct bond, - $C(=O)-NH-$ , - $NH-C(=O)-$  or - $NH-C(=O)-CH_2$ .
- 5 Preferably, each  $X_4$  is independently - $O-$  or - $NR_4-$ .
- Preferably,  $X_3$  is O.
- In preferred embodiments, M is - $R_5-X_4-C(=X_5)-$  or - $R_5-X_4-(YX_5)P(=X_5)-X_4-$ , more preferably - $CH_2O-C(=O)$  or - $CH_2O-(HO)P(=O)-O-$ . In other preferred embodiments, M is
- 10 - $R_5-X_4-C(=X_5)-$  or - $R_5-C(=X_5)-X_4-$ . In other preferred embodiments, M is - $R_5-X_4-(YX_5)P(=X_5)-X_4-$  or - $X_4-(YX_5)P(=X_5)-X_4-R_5-$ , wherein at least one of  $X_4$  or  $X_5$  is S.
- In the above formula, Z is a hydrophilic polymer. Preferably, Z is selected from the group consisting of polyalkyleneoxides, polyvinyl alcohol, polyvinylpyrrolidones, polyacrylamides, polymethacrylamides, polyphosphazenes, poly(hydroxyalkylcarboxylic acids) and polyoxazolidines. More preferably, Z comprises a polyalkyleneoxide. Even
- 15 more preferably, Z is a polyalkyleneoxide selected from the group consisting of polyethylene glycol and polypropylene glycol, with polyethylene glycol being still more preferred. In certain other preferred embodiments, Z is a hydrophilic polymer other than polyalkylene-oxides, including polyethylene glycol and polypropylene glycol. The
- 20 molecular weight of Z may vary, depending, for example, on the particular end-use of the compounds. Preferably, Z is a polymer having a molecular weight which ranges from about 100 to about 10,000, and all combinations and subcombinations of ranges therein. More preferably, Z is a polymer having a molecular weight of from about 1,000 to about
- 25 5,000. Also preferred are polymers which exhibit polydispersities ranging from greater than about 1 to about 3, and all combinations and subcombinations of ranges therein. More preferably, Z is a polymer having a polydispersity of from greater than about 1 to about 2, with polydispersities of from greater than about 1 to about 1.5 being even more preferred, and polydispersities of from greater than about 1 to about 1.2 being still more preferred.
- 30 In the above formula, Q is a targeting ligand or a precursor thereto. In embodiments where Q is a targeting ligand, Q preferably targets lymphocytes. In addition, in embodiments where Q is a targeting ligand, Q is preferably selected from the group

- 88 -

consisting of proteins, peptides, saccharides, steroids, steroid analogs, bioactive agents, and genetic material. In these latter embodiments, Q is preferably selected from the group consisting of proteins, peptides and saccharides. Most preferred, Q targets T-cell receptors, B-cell receptors or IL-2 receptors.

- 5    In the above formula, each R<sub>1</sub> is independently alkyl which ranges from 1 to about 50 carbons, and all combinations and subcombinations of ranges therein, or alkenyl of from about 2 to about 50 carbons, and all combinations and subcombinations of ranges therein. Preferably, each R<sub>1</sub> is independently alkyl of greater than 1 to about 40 carbons. More preferably, each R<sub>1</sub> is independently alkyl of about 5 to about 30 carbons. Even more preferably, each R<sub>1</sub> is independently alkyl of about 10 to about 20 carbons, with alkyl of about 15 carbons being still more preferred. In certain preferred embodiments, R<sub>1</sub> is a shorter chain alkyl of from 1 to about 20 carbons. In certain other preferred embodiments, R<sub>1</sub> is a longer chain alkyl of from about 20 to about 50 carbons, or about 30 to about 50 carbons. In other preferred embodiments, the alkyl group in R<sub>1</sub> may be substituted with one or more fluorine atoms, and may be perfluorinated.

In the above formula, each R<sub>2</sub> is independently alkylene which ranges from 1 to about 30 carbons, and all combinations and subcombinations of ranges therein. Preferably, each R<sub>2</sub> is independently alkylene of 1 to about 20 carbons. More preferably, each R<sub>2</sub> is independently alkylene of 1 to about 10 carbons. Even more preferably, each R<sub>2</sub> is independently alkylene of 1 to about 5 carbons, with methylene being especially preferred. In other preferred embodiments, the alkylene group in R<sub>2</sub> may be substituted with one or more fluorine atoms, and may be perfluorinated.

- In the above formula, each of R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> is independently hydrogen or alkyl which ranges from 1 to about 10 carbons, and all combinations and subcombinations of ranges therein.
- 25    Preferably, each of R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> is hydrogen or alkyl of 1 to about 5 carbons. More preferably, each of R<sub>3</sub> and R<sub>4</sub> is hydrogen.

In the above formula, each R<sub>5</sub> is independently a direct bond or alkylene which ranges from 1 to about 30 carbons, and all combinations and subcombinations of ranges therein. Preferably, each R<sub>5</sub> is independently a direct bond or alkylene of 1 to about 20 carbons.

30    More preferably, each R<sub>5</sub> is independently a direct bond or alkylene of 1 to about 10 carbons. Even more preferably, each R<sub>5</sub> is independently a direct bond or alkylene of 1 to

about 5 carbons. Still more preferably, each R<sub>5</sub> is a direct bond or -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>x</sub>-, where x is 1 or 2.

The stabilizing materials and/or vesicles of the present invention may be prepared using any of a variety of suitable methods. These are described below separately for the 5 embodiments involving stabilizing materials and a gas, including gas filled vesicles, and embodiments involving stabilizing materials and a gaseous precursor, including gaseous precursor filled vesicles, although stabilizing materials comprising both a gas and a gaseous precursor are a part of the present invention. A targeting ligand may be attached to the gas and/or gaseous precursor filled vesicle by bonding to one or more of the 10 materials employed in the compositions from which they are made, including the prodrugs, lipids, proteins, polymers, surfactants and/or auxiliary stabilizing materials, such as polymers or surfactants.

A wide variety of methods are available for the preparation of the stabilizing materials, including vesicles, such as micelles and/or liposomes. Included among these methods are, 15 for example, shaking, drying, gas-installation, spray drying, and the like. Suitable methods for preparing vesicle compositions are described, for example, in U.S. Patent No. 5,469,854, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. The vesicles are preferably prepared from lipids which remain in the gel state.

Micelles may be prepared using any one of a variety of conventional micellar 20 preparatory methods which will be apparent to those skilled in the art. These methods typically involve suspension of the stabilizing material, such as a lipid compound, in an organic solvent, evaporation of the solvent, resuspension in an aqueous medium, sonication and centrifugation. The foregoing methods, as well as others, are discussed, for example, in Canfield et al., *Methods in Enzymology*, 189:418-422 (1990); El-Gorab et al, 25 *Biochem. Biophys. Acta*, 306:58-66 (1973); *Colloidal Surfactant*, Shinoda, K., Nakagana, Tamamushi and Isejura, Academic Press, NY (1963) (especially "The Formation of Micelles", Shinoda, Chapter 1, pp. 1-88); *Catalysis in Micellar and Macromolecular Systems*, Fendler and Fendler, Academic Press, NY (1975). The disclosures of each of the foregoing publications are hereby incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

30 In liposomes, the lipid compound(s) may be in the form of a monolayer or bilayer, and the monolayer or bilayer lipids may be used to form one or more monolayers or bilayers. In the case of more than one monolayer or bilayer, the monolayers or bilayers are

- 90 -

generally concentric. Thus, lipids may be used to form unilamellar liposomes (comprised of one monolayer or bilayer), oligolamellar liposomes (comprised of two or three monolayers or bilayers) or multilamellar liposomes (comprised of more than three monolayers or bilayers).

- 5 A wide variety of methods are available in connection with the preparation of vesicles, including liposomes. Accordingly, liposomes may be prepared using any one of a variety of conventional liposomal preparatory techniques which will be apparent to those skilled in the art, including, for example, solvent dialysis, French press, extrusion (with or without freeze-thaw), reverse phase evaporation, simple freeze-thaw, sonication, chelate dialysis,
- 10 homogenization, solvent infusion, microemulsification, spontaneous formation, solvent vaporization, solvent dialysis, French pressure cell technique, controlled detergent dialysis, and others, each involving the preparation of the vesicles in various fashions. See, e.g., Madden et al., *Chemistry and Physics of Lipids*, 53:37-46 (1990), the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. Suitable freeze-thaw
- 15 techniques are described, for example, in International Application Serial No. PCT/US89/05040, filed November 8, 1989, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. Methods which involve freeze-thaw techniques are preferred in connection with the preparation of liposomes. Preparation of the liposomes may be carried out in a solution, such as an aqueous saline solution, aqueous phosphate
- 20 buffer solution, or sterile water. The liposomes may also be prepared by various processes which involve shaking or vortexing, which may be achieved, for example, by the use of a mechanical shaking device, such as a Wig-L-Bug™ (Crescent Dental, Lyons, IL), a Mixomat, sold by Degussa AG, Frankfurt, Germany, a Capmix, sold by Espe Fabrik Pharmazeutischer Praeparate GMBH & Co., Seefeld, Oberay Germany, a Silamat Plus,
- 25 sold by Vivadent, Lechtenstein, or a Vibros, sold by Quayle Dental, Sussex, England. Conventional microemulsification equipment, such as a Microfluidizer™ (Microfluidics, Woburn, MA) may also be used.
- Spray drying may be employed to prepare gas filled vesicles. Utilizing this procedure, the stabilizing materials, such as lipids, may be pre-mixed in an aqueous environment and
- 30 then spray dried to produce gas filled vesicles. The vesicles may be stored under a headspace of a desired gas.

- 91 -

Many liposomal preparatory techniques which may be adapted for use in the preparation of vesicle compositions are discussed, for example, in U.S. Patent Nos. 4,728,578, 4,728,575, 4,737,323, 4,533,254, 4,162,282, 4,310,505, and 4,921,706; U.K. Patent Application GB 2193095 A; International Application Serial Nos. PCT/US85/01161 and 5 PCT/US89/05040; Mayer et al., *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, 858:161-168 (1986); Hope et al., *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, 812:55-65 (1985); Mayhew et al., *Methods in Enzymology*, 149:64-77 (1987); Mayhew et al., *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, 755:169-74 (1984); Cheng et al., *Investigative Radiology*, 22:47-55 (1987); and *Liposome Technology*, Gregoriadis, G., ed., Vol. I, pp. 29-31, 51-67 and 79-108 (CRC Press Inc., 10 Boca Raton, FL 1984), the disclosures of each of which are hereby incorporated by reference herein in their entirety.

In connection with stabilizing materials, and especially lipid compositions in the form of vesicles, it may be advantageous to prepare the lipid compositions at a temperature below the gel to liquid crystalline phase transition temperature of the lipids. This phase 15 transition temperature is the temperature at which a lipid bilayer will convert from a gel state to a liquid crystalline state. See, for example, Chapman et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 249:2512-2521 (1974), the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference herein in its entirety. It is generally believed that vesicles which are prepared from lipids that possess higher gel state to liquid crystalline state phase transition temperatures tend to 20 have enhanced impermeability at any given temperature. The main chain melting transitions of saturated diacyl-sn-glycero-3-phosphocholines are described by Derek Marsh, *CRC Handbook of Lipid Bilayers* (CRC Press, Boca Raton, FL 1990), at p. 139, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference herein in its entirety. The gel state to liquid crystalline state phase transition temperatures of various lipids will be 25 apparent to one skilled in the art and are described, for example, by Gregoriadis, ed., *Liposome Technology*, Vol. I, 1-18 (CRC Press, 1984).

Stabilizing materials, such as lipids, comprising a gas can be prepared by agitating an aqueous solution containing, if desired, a stabilizing material, in the presence of a gas. The term "agitating" means any shaking motion of an aqueous solution such that gas is 30 introduced from the local ambient environment into the aqueous solution. This agitation is preferably conducted at a temperature below the gel to liquid crystalline phase transition temperature of the lipid. The shaking involved in the agitation of the solutions is

- 92 -

preferably of sufficient force to result in the formation of a lipid composition, including vesicle compositions, and particularly vesicle compositions comprising gas filled vesicles. The shaking may be by swirling, such as by vortexing, side-to-side, or up and down motion. Different types of motion may be combined. Also, the shaking may occur by 5 shaking the container holding the aqueous lipid solution, or by shaking the aqueous solution within the container without shaking the container itself.

- The shaking may occur manually or by machine. Mechanical shakers that may be used include, for example, a shaker table such as a VWR Scientific (Cerritos, CA) shaker table, as well as any of the shaking devices described hereinbefore, with the Capmix (Espe 10 Fabrik Pharmazeutischer Praeparate GMBH & Co., Seefeld, Oberay Germany) being preferred. It has been found that certain modes of shaking or vortexing can be used to make vesicles within a preferred size range. Shaking is preferred, and it is preferred that the shaking be carried out using the Espe Capmix mechanical shaker. In accordance with this preferred method, it is preferred that a reciprocating motion be utilized to generate the 15 lipid compositions, and particularly vesicles. It is even more preferred that the motion be reciprocating in the form of an arc. It is contemplated that the rate of reciprocation, as well as the arc thereof, is particularly important in connection with the formation of vesicles. Preferably, the number of reciprocations or full cycle oscillations is from about 1000 to about 20,000 per minute. More preferably, the number of reciprocations or 20 oscillations is from about 2500 to about 8000, with reciprocations or oscillations of from about 3300 to about 5000 being even more preferred. Of course, the number of oscillations can be dependent upon the mass of the contents being agitated. Generally speaking, a larger mass requires fewer oscillations. Another means for producing shaking includes the action of gas emitted under high velocity or pressure.
- 25 It will also be understood that preferably, with a larger volume of aqueous solution, the total amount of force will be correspondingly increased. Vigorous shaking is defined as at least about 60 shaking motions per minute, and is preferred. Vortexing at about 60 to about 300 revolutions per minute is more preferred. Vortexing at about 300 to about 1800 revolutions per minute is even more preferred.
- 30 In addition to the simple shaking methods described above, more elaborate methods can also be employed. Such elaborate methods include, for example, liquid crystalline shaking gas instillation processes and vacuum drying gas instillation processes,

- 93 -

such as those described in U.S. Patent Nos. 5,469,854, 5,580,575, 5,585,112, and 5,542,935, and U.S. Application Serial No. 08/307,305, filed September 16, 1994, the disclosures of which are incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. Emulsion processes may also be employed in the preparation of compositions in accordance with the 5 present invention. Such emulsification processes are described, for example, in Quay, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,558,094, 5,558,853, 5,558,854, and 5,573,751, the disclosures of which are hereby incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. Spray drying may be also employed to prepare the gaseous precursor filled vesicles. Utilizing this procedure, the lipids may be pre-mixed in an aqueous environment and then spray dried to produce 10 gaseous precursor filled vesicles. The vesicles may be stored under a headspace of a desired gas. Although any of a number of varying techniques can be used, the vesicle compositions employed in the present invention are preferably prepared using a shaking technique. Preferably, the shaking technique involves agitation with a mechanical shaking apparatus, such as an Espe Capmix (Seefeld, Oberay Germany), using, for example, the 15 techniques disclosed in U.S. application Serial No. 160,232, filed November 30, 1993, the disclosures of which are hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. In addition, after extrusion and sterilization procedures, which are discussed in detail below, agitation or shaking may provide vesicle compositions which can contain substantially no or minimal residual anhydrous lipid phase in the remainder of the solution. (Bangham, et 20 al, *J. Mol. Biol.*, 13:238-252 (1965). Other preparatory techniques include those described in Unger, U.S. Patent No. 5,205,290, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

Foams comprise an additional embodiment of the invention. Foams find biomedical application in implants for local delivery of drugs, tissue augmentation, wound 25 healing, and prevention of peritoneal adhesions. Phospholipid foams can be created by increasing the concentration of the phospholipids as well as by mixing with materials such as cetyl alcohol, surfactants, simethicone or polymers, such as methylcellulose. Fluorinated phospholipids may also be used to create stable, long-lasting foams. The most 30 stable foams are generally prepared from materials which are polymerized or cross-linked, such as polymerizable phospholipids. Since foaming is also a function of surface tension reduction, detergents are generally useful foaming agents.

- 94 -

Foams can also be produced by shaking gas filled vesicles, wherein the foam appears on the top of the aqueous solution, and is coupled with a decrease in the volume of the aqueous solution upon the formation of foam. Preferably, the final volume of the foam is at least about two times the initial volume of the aqueous stabilizing material solution;

5 more preferably, the final volume of the foam is at least about three times the initial volume of the aqueous solution; even more preferably, the final volume of the foam is at least about four times the initial volume of the aqueous solution; and most preferably, all of the aqueous stabilizing material solution is converted to foam.

The required duration of shaking time may be determined by detection of the

10 formation of foam. For example, 10 ml of lipid solution in a 50 ml centrifuge tube may be vortexed for approximately 15-20 minutes or until the viscosity of the gas filled liposomes becomes sufficiently thick so that it no longer clings to the side walls as it is swirled. At this time, the foam may cause the solution containing the gas filled liposomes to raise to a level of 30 to 35 ml.

15 The concentration of lipid required to form a preferred foam level will vary depending upon the type of lipid used, and may be readily determined by one skilled in the art, in view of the present disclosure. For example, in preferred embodiments, the concentration of 1,2-dipalmitoyl-phosphatidylcholine (DPPC) used to form gas filled liposomes according to the methods of the present invention is about 20 mg/ml to about 30

20 mg/ml saline solution. The concentration of distearoylphosphatidylcholine (DSPC) used in preferred embodiments is about 5 mg/ml to about 10 mg/ml saline solution.

Specifically, DPPC in a concentration of 20 mg/ml to 30 mg/ml, upon shaking, yields a total suspension and entrapped gas volume four times greater than the suspension volume alone. DSPC in a concentration of 10 mg/ml, upon shaking, yields a total volume

25 completely devoid of any liquid suspension volume and contains entirely foam.

Microemulsification is a common method of preparing an emulsion of a foam precursor. Temperature increases and/or lowered pressures will cause foaming as gas bubbles form in the liquid. As discussed above, the foam may be stabilized by, for example, surfactants, detergents or polymers.

30 The size of gas filled vesicles can be adjusted, if desired, by a variety of procedures, including, for example, microemulsification, vortexing, extrusion, filtration, sonication, homogenization, repeated freezing and thawing cycles, extrusion under

- 95 -

pressure through pores of defined size, and similar methods. Gas filled vesicles prepared in accordance with the methods described herein can range in size from less than about 1  $\mu\text{m}$  to greater than about 100  $\mu\text{m}$ . In addition, after extrusion and sterilization procedures, which are discussed in detail below, agitation or shaking provides vesicle compositions  
5 which provide substantially no or minimal residual anhydrous lipid phase in the remainder of the solution. (Bangham, A.D., Standish, M.M., & Watkins, J.C., *J. Mol. Biol.* Vol. 13, pp. 238-252 (1965). If desired, the vesicles of the present invention may be used as they are formed, without any attempt at further modification of the size thereof. For intravascular use, the vesicles preferably have diameters of less than about 30  $\mu\text{m}$ , and  
10 more preferably, less than about 12  $\mu\text{m}$ . For targeted intravascular use including, for example, binding to certain tissue, such as cancerous tissue, the vesicles can be significantly smaller, for example, less than about 100 nm in diameter. For enteric or gastrointestinal use, the vesicles can be significantly larger, for example, up to a millimeter in size. Preferably, the vesicles are sized to have diameters of from about 2  $\mu\text{m}$   
15 to about 100  $\mu\text{m}$ .

The gas filled vesicles may be sized by a simple process of extrusion through filters wherein the filter pore sizes control the size distribution of the resulting gas filled vesicles. By using two or more cascaded or stacked set of filters, for example, a 10  $\mu\text{m}$  filter followed by an 8  $\mu\text{m}$  filter, the gas filled vesicles can be selected to have a very  
20 narrow size distribution around 7 to 9  $\mu\text{m}$ . After filtration, these gas filled vesicles can remain stable for over 24 hours.

The sizing or filtration step may be accomplished by the use, for example, of a filter assembly when the composition is removed from a sterile vial prior to use, or more preferably, the filter assembly may be incorporated into a syringe during use. The method  
25 of sizing the vesicles will then comprise using a syringe comprising a barrel, at least one filter, and a needle; and will be carried out by an extraction step which comprises extruding the vesicles from the barrel through the filter fitted to the syringe between the barrel and the needle, thereby sizing the vesicles before they are administered to a patient. The extraction step may also comprise drawing the vesicles into the syringe, where the  
30 filter will function in the same way to size the vesicles upon entrance into the syringe. Another alternative is to fill such a syringe with vesicles which have already been sized by some other means, in which case the filter now functions to ensure that only vesicles

within the desired size range, or of the desired maximum size, are subsequently administered by extrusion from the syringe.

- In certain preferred embodiments, the vesicle compositions may be heat sterilized or filter sterilized and extruded through a filter prior to shaking. Generally speaking,
- 5 vesicle compositions comprising a gas may be heat sterilized, and vesicle compositions comprising gaseous precursors may be filter sterilized. Once gas filled vesicles are formed, they may be filtered for sizing as described above. Performing these steps prior to the formation of gas and gaseous precursor filled vesicles provide sterile gas filled vesicles ready for administration to a patient. For example, a mixing vessel such as a vial or
- 10 syringe may be filled with a filtered lipid composition, and the composition may be sterilized within the mixing vessel, for example, by autoclaving. Gas may be instilled into the composition to form gas filled vesicles by shaking the sterile vessel. Preferably, the sterile vessel is equipped with a filter positioned such that the gas filled vesicles pass through the filter before contacting a patient.
- 15 The step of extruding the solution of lipid compound through a filter decreases the amount of unhydrated material by breaking up any dried materials and exposing a greater surface area for hydration. Preferably, the filter has a pore size of about 0.1 to about 5  $\mu\text{m}$ , more preferably, about 0.1 to about 4  $\mu\text{m}$ , even more preferably, about 0.1 to about 2  $\mu\text{m}$ , and still more preferably, about 1  $\mu\text{m}$ . Unhydrated compound, which is generally
- 20 undesirable, appears as amorphous clumps of non-uniform size.
- The sterilization step provides a composition that may be readily administered to a patient for diagnostic imaging including, for example, ultrasound or CT. In certain preferred embodiments, sterilization may be accomplished by heat sterilization, preferably, by autoclaving the solution at a temperature of at least about 100°C, and more
- 25 preferably, by autoclaving at about 100°C to about 130°C, even more preferably, about 110°C to about 130°C, still more preferably, about 120°C to about 130°C, and even more preferably, about 130°C. Preferably, heating occurs for at least about 1 minute, more preferably, about 1 to about 30 minutes, even more preferably, about 10 to about 20 minutes, and still more preferably, about 15 minutes.
- 30 If desired, the extrusion and heating steps, as outlined above, may be reversed, or only one of the two steps can be used. Other modes of sterilization may be used, including, for example, exposure to gamma radiation.

- 97 -

In addition to the aforementioned embodiments, gaseous precursors contained in vesicles can be formulated which, upon activation, for example, by exposure to elevated temperature, varying pH, or light, undergo a phase transition from, for example, a liquid, including a liquid entrapped in a vesicle, to a gas, expanding to create the gas filled 5 vesicles described herein. This technique is described in detail in copending patent application Serial No. 08/159,687, filed November 30, 1993, and U.S. Patent No. 5,542,935, the disclosures of which are hereby incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

The preferred method of activating the gaseous precursor is by exposure to 10 elevated temperature. Activation or transition temperature, and like terms, refer to the boiling point of the gaseous precursor and is the temperature at which the liquid to gaseous phase transition of the gaseous precursor takes place. Useful gaseous precursors are those materials which have boiling points in the range of about -100°C to about 70°C. The activation temperature is particular to each gaseous precursor. An activation temperature 15 of about 37°C, or about human body temperature, is preferred for gaseous precursors in the context of the present invention. Thus, in preferred form, a liquid gaseous precursor is activated to become a gas at about 37°C or below. The gaseous precursor may be in liquid or gaseous phase for use in the methods of the present invention.

The methods of preparing the gaseous precursor filled vesicles may be carried out 20 below the boiling point of the gaseous precursor such that a liquid is incorporated, for example, into a vesicle. In addition, the methods may be conducted at the boiling point of the gaseous precursor, such that a gas is incorporated, for example, into a vesicle. For gaseous precursors having low temperature boiling points, liquid precursors may be emulsified using a microfluidizer device chilled to a low temperature. The boiling points 25 may also be depressed using solvents in liquid media to utilize a precursor in liquid form. Further, the methods may be performed where the temperature is increased throughout the process, whereby the process starts with a gaseous precursor as a liquid and ends with a gas.

The gaseous precursor may be selected so as to form the gas *in situ* in the targeted 30 tissue or fluid, *in vivo* upon entering the patient or animal, prior to use, during storage, or during manufacture. The methods of producing the temperature-activated gaseous precursor filled vesicles may be carried out at a temperature below the boiling point of the

- 98 -

gaseous precursor. In this embodiment, the gaseous precursor is entrapped within a vesicle such that the phase transition does not occur during manufacture. Instead, the gaseous precursor filled vesicles are manufactured in the liquid phase of the gaseous precursor. Activation of the phase transition may take place at any time as the temperature  
5 is allowed to exceed the boiling point of the precursor. Also, knowing the amount of liquid in a droplet of liquid gaseous precursor, the size of the vesicles upon attaining the gaseous state may be determined.

Alternatively, the gaseous precursors may be utilized to create stable gas filled vesicles which are pre-formed prior to use. In this embodiment, the gaseous precursor is  
10 added to a container housing a lipid composition at a temperature below the liquid-gaseous phase transition temperature of the respective gaseous precursor. As the temperature is increased, and an emulsion is formed between the gaseous precursor and liquid solution, the gaseous precursor undergoes transition from the liquid to the gaseous state. As a result of this heating and gas formation, the gas displaces the air in the head space above the  
15 liquid mixture so as to form gas filled vesicles which entrap the gas of the gaseous precursor, ambient gas (e.g. air), or coentrap gas state gaseous precursor and ambient air. This phase transition can be used for optimal mixing and formation of the contrast agent. For example, the gaseous precursor, perfluorobutane, can be entrapped in the lipid vesicles and as the temperature is raised beyond the boiling point of perfluorobutane (4°C),  
20 perfluorobutane gas is entrapped in the vesicles.

Accordingly, the gaseous precursors may be selected to form gas filled vesicles *in vivo* or may be designed to produce the gas filled vesicles *in situ*, during the manufacturing process, on storage, or at some time prior to use. A water bath, sonicator or hydrodynamic activation by pulling back the plunger of a syringe against a closed  
25 stopcock may be used to activate targeted gas filled vesicles from temperature-sensitive gaseous precursors prior to IV injection.

As a further embodiment of this invention, by pre-forming the gaseous precursor in the liquid state into an aqueous emulsion, the maximum size of the vesicle may be estimated by using the ideal gas law, once the transition to the gaseous state is effectuated.  
30 For the purpose of making gas filled vesicles from gaseous precursors, the gas phase is assumed to form instantaneously and substantially no gas in the newly formed vesicle has been depleted due to diffusion into the liquid, which is generally aqueous in nature.

- 99 -

Hence, from a known liquid volume in the emulsion, one would be able to predict an upper limit to the size of the gas filled vesicle.

In embodiments of the present invention, a mixture of a lipid compound and a gaseous precursor, containing liquid droplets of defined size, may be formulated such that upon reaching a specific temperature, for example, the boiling point of the gaseous precursor, the droplets will expand into gas filled vesicles of defined size. The defined size represents an upper limit to the actual size because the ideal gas law cannot account for such factors as gas diffusion into solution, loss of gas to the atmosphere, and the effects of increased pressure.

The ideal gas law, which can be used for calculating the increase in the volume of the gas bubbles upon transitioning from liquid to gaseous states, is  $PV = nRT$ , where P is pressure in atmospheres (atm); V is volume in liters (L); n is moles of gas; T is temperature in degrees Kelvin (K); and R is the ideal gas constant (22.4 L-atm/K-mole).

With knowledge of volume, density, and temperature of the liquid in the mixture of liquids, the amount, for example, in moles, and volume of liquid precursor may be calculated which, when converted to a gas, will expand into a vesicle of known volume. The calculated volume will reflect an upper limit to the size of the gas filled vesicle, assuming instantaneous expansion into a gas filled vesicle and negligible diffusion of the gas over the time of the expansion.

Thus, for stabilization of the precursor in the liquid state in a mixture wherein the precursor droplet is spherical, the volume of the precursor droplet may be determined by the equation: Volume (spherical vesicle) =  $4/3 \pi r^3$ , where r is the radius of the sphere.

Once the volume is predicted, and knowing the density of the liquid at the desired temperature, the amount of liquid gaseous precursor in the droplet may be determined. In more descriptive terms, the following can be applied:  $V_{gas} = 4/3 \pi (r_{gas})^3$  by the ideal gas law,  $PV=nRT$ , substituting reveals,  $V_{gas} = nRT/P_{gas}$ , or, (A)  $n = 4/3 [\pi r_{gas}^3] P/RT$ , where amount

$$n = 4/3 [\pi r_{gas}^3 P/RT] \cdot MW_n. \text{ Converting back to a liquid volume}$$

$$(B) V_{liq} = [4/3 [\pi r_{gas}^3] P/RT] \cdot MW_n/D, \text{ where D is the density of the precursor.}$$

Solving for the diameter of the liquid droplet,

$$(C) \text{diameter}/2 = [3/4\pi [4/3 \cdot [\pi r_{gas}^3] P/RT] MW_n/D]^{1/3}, \text{ which reduces to}$$

$$\text{Diameter} = 2[[r_{gas}^3] P/RT [MW_n/D]]^{1/3}.$$

- 100 -

As a further means of preparing vesicles of the desired size for use in the methods of the present invention, and with a knowledge of the volume and especially the radius of the liquid droplets, one can use appropriately sized filters to size the gaseous precursor droplets to the appropriate diameter sphere.

- 5     A representative gaseous precursor may be used to form a vesicle of defined size, for example, 10  $\mu\text{m}$  diameter. In this example, the vesicle is formed in the bloodstream of a human being, thus the typical temperature would be 37°C or 310 K. At a pressure of 1 atmosphere and using the equation in (A),  $7.54 \times 10^{-17}$  moles of gaseous precursor would be required to fill the volume of a 10  $\mu\text{m}$  diameter vesicle.
- 10    Using the above calculated amount of gaseous precursor and 1-fluorobutane, which possesses a molecular weight of 76.11, a boiling point of 32.5°C and a density of 0.7789 g/mL at 20°C, further calculations predict that  $5.74 \times 10^{-15}$  grams of this precursor would be required for a 10  $\mu\text{m}$  vesicle. Extrapolating further, and with the knowledge of the density, equation (B) further predicts that  $8.47 \times 10^{-16}$  mL of liquid precursor is necessary
- 15    to form a vesicle with an upper limit of 10  $\mu\text{m}$ .

Finally, using equation (C), a mixture, for example, an emulsion containing droplets with a radius of 0.0272  $\mu\text{m}$  or a corresponding diameter of 0.0544  $\mu\text{m}$ , is formed to make a gaseous precursor filled vesicle with an upper limit of a 10  $\mu\text{m}$  vesicle.

- 20    An emulsion of this particular size could be easily achieved by the use of an appropriately sized filter. In addition, as seen by the size of the filter necessary to form gaseous precursor droplets of defined size, the size of the filter would also suffice to remove any possible bacterial contaminants and, hence, can be used as a sterile filtration as well.
- 25    This embodiment for preparing gas filled vesicles may be applied to all gaseous precursors activated by temperature. In fact, depression of the freezing point of the solvent system allows the use of gaseous precursors which would undergo liquid-to-gas phase transitions at temperatures below 0°C. The solvent system can be selected to provide a medium for suspension of the gaseous precursor. For example, 20% propylene glycol miscible in buffered saline exhibits a freezing point depression well below the freezing point of water alone. By increasing the amount of propylene glycol or adding materials such as sodium chloride, the freezing point can be depressed even further.
- 30

The selection of appropriate solvent systems may be determined by physical methods as well. When substances, solid or liquid, herein referred to as solutes, are dissolved in a

- 101 -

solvent, such as water based buffers, the freezing point is lowered by an amount that is dependent upon the composition of the solution. Thus, as defined by Wall, one can express the freezing point depression of the solvent by the following equation:

- $\ln x_s = \ln (1 - x_b) = \Delta H_{fus}/R(1/T_0 - 1/T)$ , where  $x_s$  is the mole fraction of the solvent;  $x_b$  is 5 the mole fraction of the solute;  $\Delta H_{fus}$  is the heat of fusion of the solvent; and  $T_0$  is the normal freezing point of the solvent. The normal freezing point of the solvent can be obtained by solving the equation. If  $x_b$  is small relative to  $x_s$ , then the above equation may be rewritten as:  $x^b = \Delta H_{fus}/R[T - T_0/T_0T] \approx \Delta H_{fus}\Delta T/RT_0$ .

- The above equation assumes the change in temperature  $\Delta T$  is small compared to  $T_0$ .  
 10 This equation can be simplified further by expressing the concentration of the solute in terms of molality,  $m$  (moles of solute per thousand grams of solvent). Thus, the equation can be rewritten as:  $X_b = m/[m + 1000/m_s] \approx mM_a/1000$ , where  $M_a$  is the molecular weight of the solvent. Thus, substituting for the fraction  $x_b$ :  $\Delta T = [M_aRT_0^2/1000\Delta H_{fus}]m$  or  
 15  $\Delta T = K_f m$ , where  $K_f = M_aRT_0^2/1000\Delta H_{fus}$ ,  $K_f$  is the molal freezing point and is equal to 1.86 degrees per unit of molal concentration for water at one atmosphere pressure. The above equation may be used to accurately determine the molal freezing point of solutions of gaseous-precursor filled vesicles. Accordingly, the above equation can be applied to estimate freezing point depressions and to determine the appropriate concentrations of liquid or solid solute necessary to depress the solvent freezing temperature to an  
 20 appropriate value.

- Methods of preparing the temperature activated gaseous precursor filled vesicles include:  
 25 (a) vortexing and/or shaking an aqueous mixture of gaseous precursor and additional materials as desired, including, for example, stabilizing materials, thickening agents and/or dispersing agents. Optional variations of this method include autoclaving before vortexing or shaking; heating an aqueous mixture of gaseous precursor; venting the vessel containing the mixture/suspension; shaking or permitting the gaseous precursor filled vesicle to form spontaneously and cooling down the suspension of gaseous precursor filled vesicles; and extruding an aqueous suspension of gaseous precursor through a filter of about 0.22  $\mu\text{m}$ . Alternatively, filtering may be performed during *in vivo* administration of  
 30 the vesicles such that a filter of about 0.22  $\mu\text{m}$  is employed;  
 (b) microemulsification whereby an aqueous mixture of gaseous precursor is emulsified by agitation and heated to form, for example, vesicles prior to administration to a patient;

- 102 -

- (c) heating a gaseous precursor in a mixture, with or without agitation, whereby the less dense gaseous precursor filled vesicles float to the top of the solution by expanding and displacing other vesicles in the vessel and venting the vessel to release air; and
- 5 (d) utilizing in any of the above methods a sealed vessel to hold the aqueous suspension of gaseous precursor and maintaining the suspension at a temperature below the phase transition temperature of the gaseous precursor, followed by autoclaving to raise the temperature above the phase transition temperature, optionally with shaking, or permitting the gaseous precursor vesicle to form spontaneously, whereby the expanded gaseous precursor in the sealed vessel increases the pressure in the vessel, and cooling down the
- 10 gas filled vesicle suspension, after which shaking may also take place.

Freeze drying is useful to remove water and organic materials prior to the shaking installation method. Drying installation methods may be used to remove water from vesicles. By pre-entrapping the gaseous precursor in the dried vesicles (i.e. prior to drying) after warming, the gaseous precursor may expand to fill the vesicle. Gaseous precursors can also be used to fill dried vesicles after they have been subjected to vacuum. As the dried vesicles are kept at a temperature below their gel state to liquid crystalline temperature, the drying chamber can be slowly filled with the gaseous precursor in its gaseous state. For example, perfluorobutane can be used to fill dried vesicles at temperatures above 4°C (the boiling point of perfluorobutane).

- 20 Preferred methods for preparing the temperature activated gaseous precursor filled vesicles comprise shaking an aqueous solution having a lipid compound in the presence of a gaseous precursor at a temperature below the liquid state to gas state phase transition temperature of the gaseous precursor. This is preferably conducted at a temperature below the gel state to liquid crystalline state phase transition temperature of the lipid. The
- 25 mixture is then heated to a temperature above the liquid state to gas state phase transition temperature of the gaseous precursor which causes the precursor to volatilize and expand. Heating is then discontinued, and the temperature of the mixture is then allowed to drop below the liquid state to gas state phase transition temperature of the gaseous precursor. Shaking of the mixture may take place during the heating step, or subsequently after the
- 30 mixture is allowed to cool.

Other methods for preparing gaseous precursor filled vesicles can involve shaking an aqueous solution of, for example, a lipid and a gaseous precursor, and separating the resulting gaseous precursor filled vesicles.

Conventional, aqueous-filled liposomes of the prior art are routinely formed at a 5 temperature above the phase transition temperature of the lipids used to make them, since they are more flexible and thus useful in biological systems in the liquid crystalline state. See, for example, Szoka and Papahadjopoulos, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.* (1978) 75, 4194-4198. In contrast, the vesicles made according to certain preferred embodiments described herein are gaseous precursor filled, which imparts greater flexibility, since gaseous 10 precursors after gas formation are more compressible and compliant than an aqueous solution.

The methods contemplated by the present invention provide for shaking an aqueous solution comprising a lipid, in the presence of a temperature activatable gaseous precursor. Preferably, the shaking is of sufficient force such that a foam is formed within a short 15 period of time, such as about 30 minutes, and preferably within about 20 minutes, and more preferably, within about 10 minutes. The shaking may involve microemulsifying, microfluidizing, swirling (such as by vortexing), side-to-side, or up and down motion. In the case of the addition of gaseous precursor in the liquid state, sonication may be used in addition to the shaking methods set forth above. Further, different types of motion may be 20 combined. Also, the shaking may occur by shaking the container holding the aqueous lipid solution, or by shaking the aqueous solution within the container without shaking the container itself. Further, the shaking may occur manually or by machine. Mechanical shakers that may be used include, for example, the mechanical shakers described hereinbefore, with an Espe Capmix (Seefeld, Oberay Germany) being preferred. Another 25 means for producing shaking includes the action of gaseous precursor emitted under high velocity or pressure.

According to the methods described herein, a gas, such as air, may also be provided by the local ambient atmosphere. The local ambient atmosphere can include the atmosphere within a sealed container, as well as the external environment. Alternatively, for example, 30 a gas may be injected into or otherwise added to the container having the aqueous lipid solution or into the aqueous lipid solution itself to provide a gas other than air. Gases that are lighter than air are generally added to a sealed container, while gases heavier than air

- 104 -

can be added to a sealed or an unsealed container. Accordingly, the present invention includes co-entrapment of air and/or other gases along with gaseous precursors.

Hence, the gaseous precursor filled vesicles can be used in substantially the same manner as the gas filled vesicles described herein, once activated by application to the tissues of a host, where such factors as temperature or pH may be used to cause generation of the gas. It is preferred that the gaseous precursors undergo phase transitions from liquid to gaseous states at or near the normal body temperature of the host, and are thereby activated, for example, by the *in vivo* temperature of the host so as to undergo transition to the gaseous phase therein. Alternatively, activation prior to IV injection may be used, for example, by thermal, mechanical or optical means. This activation can occur where, for example, the host tissue is human tissue having a normal temperature of about 37°C and the gaseous precursors undergo phase transitions from liquid to gaseous states near 37°C. In any of the techniques described above for the preparation of lipid-based vesicles, the prodrugs of the present invention and/or the targeting ligands of the present invention may be incorporated with the lipids before, during or after formation of the vesicles, as would be apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art in view of the present disclosure.

Conjugates of bioactive agents or targeting ligands and fluorinated surfactants can be synthesized by variations of the reaction sequences set forth in the present disclosure and according to methods known to one skilled in the art, as described, for example, by Quay, et al, European Patent Publication EP 0 727 225 A2, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. If the prodrug of choice contains a fluorinated surfactant, such as Zonyl FSN-100™, the Zonyl can be heated at reduced pressure to drive off volatile components, then the oily residue is reacted with a conjugation linker, the choice of which will ultimately depend on the chemistry of the functional groups on the bioactive agent. Alternatively, the bioactive agent could be activated by methods well-known in the art.

Targeting ligand/fluorinated surfactant conjugates and the prodrugs of the present invention can be prepared by the reaction schemes shown below, where "LIG" refers to a targeting ligand or bioactive agent of the present invention and "R<sub>f</sub>" refers to a fluorinated surfactant or fluorinated amphiphilic moiety of the present invention.

- 105 -

- $$\begin{aligned} R_f(CH_2CH_2O)_xCOCl + LIG-NH_2 &\sim R_f(CH_2CH_2O)_xCONH-LIG \\ R_f(OCH_2CH_2)_xCOCl + LIG-OH &\sim R_f(CH_2CH_2O)_xCO_2-LIG \\ R_fCH_2CH_2(OCH_2CH_2)_xSH + LIG-SH &\sim R_fCH_2CH_2(OCH_2CH_2)_xSS-LIG \\ R_fSO_2Cl + LIG-NH_2 &\sim R_fSO_2NH-LIG \end{aligned}$$
- 5      LIG-CHO + R<sub>f</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>x</sub>NH<sub>2</sub> + NaCNBH<sub>3</sub> ~ R<sub>f</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>x</sub>NH-LIG
- $$\begin{aligned} LIG-Br + R_fCH_2CH_2(OCH_2CH_2)_xSH &\sim R_fCH_2CH_2(OCH_2CH_2)_xS-LIG \\ LIG-Br + R_fCH_2 + Bu_3SnH &\sim R_fCH_2CH_2-LIG \\ R_fCOCl + LIG-NH_2 &\sim R_fCONH-LIG \\ R_fNCO + LIG-NH_2 &\sim R_fNCONH-LIG \end{aligned}$$
- 10     LIG-CHO + R<sub>f</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>x</sub>NH<sub>2</sub> ~ R<sub>f</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>x</sub>NH-LIG + R<sub>f</sub>COCl - (R<sub>f</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>x</sub>)(R<sub>f</sub>CO)N-LIG

Polyethylene glycol containing fragments, that may be used in the above schemes include, for example, PEG2-NHS ester, NHS-PEG-VS, NHS-PEG-MAL, methoxy-PEG-vinylsulfone, PEG-(VS)<sub>2</sub>, methoxy-PEG-ald, PEG-(ald)<sub>2</sub>, methoxy-PEG-epx, PEG-(epx)<sub>2</sub>, 15 methoxy-PEG-Tres, PEG-(Tres)<sub>2</sub>, methoxy-PEG-NPC, PEG-(NPC)<sub>2</sub>, methoxy-PEG-CDI, PEG-(CDI)<sub>2</sub>, mPEG-Gly-OSu, mPEG-NLe-OSu, methoxy-SPA-PEG, (SPA)<sub>2</sub>-PEG, methoxy-SS-PEG, (SS)<sub>2</sub>-PEG all of which are available from Shearwater Polymers, Inc. (Huntsville, Alabama). Where these types of fragments are used, *i.e.*, where the fragments may not themselves have surfactant properties adequate for a given ultrasound contrast 20 formulation, or act only weakly as surfactants, the conjugate formed can be used in conjunction with other surfactants in the final formulation.

Vesicle compositions which comprise vesicles formulated from proteins (also referred to as protein encapsulated microbubbles), such as albumin vesicles, may be prepared by various processes, as will be readily apparent to those skilled in the art, in 25 view of the present disclosure. Suitable methods include those described, for example, in U.S. Patent Nos. 4,572,203, 4,718,433, 4,774,958, and 4,957,656, the disclosures of each of which are hereby incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. Included among the methods are those which involve sonicating a solution of a protein. In preferred form, the starting material may be an aqueous solution of a heat-denaturable, 30 water-soluble biocompatible protein. The encapsulating protein is preferably heat-sensitive so that it can be partially insolubilized by heating during sonication. Suitable

- 106 -

heat-sensitive proteins include, for example, albumin, hemoglobin, and collagen, preferably, the protein is a human protein, with human serum albumin (HSA) being more preferred. HSA is available commercially as a sterile 5% aqueous solution, which is suitable for use in the preparation of protein-based vesicles. As would be apparent to 5 one of ordinary skill in the art, other concentrations of albumin, as well as other proteins which are heat-denaturable, can be used to prepare the vesicles. Generally speaking, the concentration of HSA can vary and may range from about 0.1 to about 25% by weight, and all combinations and subcombinations of ranges therein. It may be preferable, in connection with certain methods for the preparation of protein-based 10 vesicles, to utilize the protein in the form of a dilute aqueous solution. For albumin, it may be preferred to utilize an aqueous solution containing from about 0.5 to about 7.5% by weight albumin, with concentrations of less than about 5% by weight being preferred, for example, from about 0.5 to about 3% by weight.

Protein-based vesicles may be prepared using equipment which is commercially 15 available. For example, in connection with a feed perparation operation as described, for example, in U.S. Patent No. 4,957,656, stainless steel tanks which are commercially available from Walker Stainless Equipment Co. (New Lisbon, WI), and process filters which are commercially available from Millipore (Bedford, MA), may be utilized.

The sonication operation may utilize both a heat exchanger and a flow through 20 sonciating vessel, in series. Heat exchanger equipment of this type may be obtained from ITT Standard (Buffalo, NY). The heat exchanger maintains operating temperature for the sonciation process, with temperature controls ranging from about 65°C to about 80°C, depending on the makeup of the media. The vibration frequency of the sonication equipment may vary over a wide range, for example, from about 5 to about 25 40 kilohertz (kHz), with a majority of the commerically available sonicators operating at about 10 or 20 kHz. Suitable sonicating equipment include, for example, a Sonics & Materials Vibra-Cell, equipped with a flat-tipped sonicator horn, commercially available from Sonics & Materials, Inc. (Danbury, CT). The power applied to the sonicator horn can be varied over power settings scaled from 1 to 10 by the manufacturer, as with 30 Sonics & Materials Vibra-Cell Model VL1500. An intermediate power setting, for example, from 5 to 9, can be used. It is preferred that the vibrational frequency and the power supplied be sufficeint to produce cavitation in the liquid being sonicated. Feed

- 107 -

flow rates may range from about 50 mL/min to about 1000 mL/min, and all combinations and subcombinations of ranges therein. Residence times in the sonication vessel can range from about 1 second to about 4 minutes, and gaseous fluid addition rates may range from about 10 cubic centimeters (cc) per minute to about 100 cc/min, or 5% to 25% of the feed flow rate, and all combinations and subcombinations of ranges therein.

It may be preferable to carry out the sonication in such a manner to produce foaming, and especially intense foaming, of the solution. Generally speaking, intense foaming and aerosolating are important for obtaining a contrast agent having enhanced concentration and stability. To promote foaming, the power input to the sonicator horn may be increased, and the process may be operated under mild pressure, for example, about 1 to about 5 psi. Foaming may be easily detected by the cloudy appearance of the solution, and by the foam produced.

Suitable methods for the preparation of protein-based vesicles may also involve physically or chemically altering the protein or protein derivative in aqueous solution to denature or fix the material. For example, protein-based vesicles may be prepared from a 5% aqueous solution of HSA by heating after formation or during formation of the contrast agent via sonication. Chemical alteration may involve chemically denaturing or fixing by binding the protein with a difunctional aldehyde, such as gluteraldehyde. For example, the vesicles may be reacted with 0.25 grams of 50% aqueous gluteraldehyde per gram of protein at pH 4.5 for 6 hours. The unreacted gluteraldehyde may then be washed away from the protein.

In any of the techniques described above for the preparation of protein-based vesicles, the prodrugs and/or targeting ligands may be incorporated with the proteins before, during or after formation of the vesicles, as would be apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art, based on the present disclosure.

Vesicle compositions which comprise vesicles formulated from polymers may be prepared by various processes, as will be readily apparent to one skilled in the art, in view of the present disclosure. Exemplary processes include, for example, interfacial polymerization, phase separation and coacervation, multiorifice centrifugal preparation, and solvent evaporation. Suitable procedures which may be employed or modified in accordance with the present disclosure to prepare vesicles from polymers include those

- 108 -

procedures described in U.S. Patent Nos. 4,179,546, 3,945,956, 4,108,806, 3,293,114, 3,401,475, 3,488,714, 4,549,892 4,420,442, 4,421,562, 4,898,734, 3,732,172, 3,594,326, 3,015,128, 3,479,811, 3,615,972, 4,540,629, and 4,822,534, Japan Kokai Tokkyo Koho 62 286534, British Patent No. 1,044,680, Deasy, *Microencapsulation and Related Drug Processes*, Vol. 20, Chs. 9 and 10, pp. 195-240 (Marcel Dekker, Inc., N.Y., 1984), Chang et al., *Canadian J. of Physiology and Pharmacology*, 44:115-129 (1966), and Chang, *Science*, 146:524-525 (1964), the disclosures of each of which are hereby incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

In accordance with a preferred synthesis protocol, the vesicles may be prepared 10 using a heat expansion process, such as, for example, the process described in U.S. Patent Nos. 4,179,546, 3,945,956, and 4,108,806, British Patent No. 1,044,680, and Japan Kokai Tokkyo Koho 62 286534. In general terms, the heat expansion process may be carried out by preparing vesicles of an expandable polymer or copolymer which may contain in their void (cavity) a volatile liquid (gaseous precursor). The vesicle is 15 then heated, plasticising the vesicle and converting the volatile liquid into a gas, causing the vesicle to expand to up to about several times its original size. When the heat is removed, the thermoplastic polymer retains at least some of its expanded shape. Vesicles produced by this process tend to be of particularly low density, and are thus preferred. The foregoing described process is well known in the art, and may be 20 referred to as the heat expansion process for preparing low density vesicles.

Polymers useful in the heat expansion process will be readily apparent to those skilled in the art and include thermoplastic polymers or copolymers, including polymers or copolymers of many of the monomers described above. Preferable of the polymers and copolymers described above include the following copolymers: polyvinylidene- 25 polyacrylo-nitrile, polyvinylidene-polyacrylonitrile-polymethylmethacrylate, and polystyrene-polyacrylonitrile. A most preferred copolymer is polyvinylidene-polyacrylonitrile.

Volatile liquids useful in the heat expansion process will also be well known to those skilled in the art and include: aliphatic hydrocarbons such as ethane, ethylene, 30 propane, propene, butane, isobutane, neopentane, acetylene, hexane, heptane; chlorofluorocarbons such as CCl<sub>3</sub>F, CCl<sub>2</sub>F<sub>3</sub>, CCIF<sub>3</sub>, CCIF<sub>2</sub>-CCl<sub>2</sub>F<sub>2</sub>, chloroheptafluoro-cyclobutane, and 1,2-dichlorohexafluorocyclobutane; tetraalkyl silanes, such as

- 109 -

tetramethyl silane, trimethylethyl silane, trimethylisopropyl silane, and trimethyl n-propyl silane; as well as perfluorocarbons, including the perfluorocarbons described above. In general, it is important that the volatile liquid not be a solvent for the polymer or copolymer being utilized. It is also preferred that the volatile liquid have a boiling point 5 that is below the softening point of the involved polymer or copolymer. Boiling points of various volatile liquids and softening points of various polymers and copolymers will be readily ascertainable to one skilled in the art, and suitable combinations of polymers or copolymers and volatile liquids will be easily apparent to the skilled artisan. By way of guidance, and as one skilled in the art would recognize, generally as the length of the 10 carbon chain of the volatile liquid increases, the boiling point of that liquid increases also. Also, mildly preheating the vesicles in water in the presence of hydrogen peroxide prior to definitive heating and expansion may pre-soften the vesicle to allow expansion to occur more readily.

For example, to produce vesicles from synthetic polymers, vinylidene and 15 acrylonitrile may be copolymerized in a medium of isobutane liquid using one or more of the foregoing modified or unmodified literature procedures, such that isobutane becomes entrapped within the vesicles. When such vesicles are then heated to a temperature of from about 80°C to about 120°C, the isobutane gas expands, which in turn expands the vesicles. After heat is removed, the expanded polyvinylidene and acrylonitrile copolymer 20 vesicles remain substantially fixed in their expanded position. The resulting low density vesicles are extremely stable both dry and suspended in an aqueous media. Isobutane is utilized herein merely as an illustrative liquid, with the understanding that other liquids which undergo liquid/gas transitions at temperatures useful for the synthesis of these 25 vesicles and formation of the very low density vesicles upon heating can be substituted for isobutane. Similarly, monomers other than vinylidene and acrylonitrile may be employed in preparing the vesicles.

In certain preferred embodiments, the vesicles which are formulated from synthetic polymers and which may be employed in the methods of the present invention are commercially available from Expance, Nobel Industries (Sundsvall, Sweden), including 30 EXPANCEL 551 DE™ microspheres. The EXPANCEL 551 DE™ microspheres are composed of a copolymer of vinylidene and acrylonitrile which have encapsulated therein isobutane liquid. Such microspheres are sold as a dry composition and are approximately

- 110 -

50 microns in size. The EXPANCEL 551 DE™ microspheres have a specific gravity of only 0.02 to 0.05, which is between one-fiftieth and one-twentieth the density of water.

In any of the techniques described above for the preparation of polymer-based vesicles, the prodrugs and/or targeting ligands may be incorporated with the polymers  
5 before, during or after formation of the vesicles, as would be apparent to one of ordinary skill in the art, based on the present disclosure.

As with the preparation of stabilizing materials and/or vesicles, a wide variety of techniques are available for the preparation of stabilizing materials comprising bioactive agents (which includes prodrugs and targeting ligands). For example, the stabilizing  
10 materials and/or vesicle compositions may be prepared from a mixture of lipid compounds, bioactive agents and gas or gaseous precursor. In this case, lipid compositions are prepared as described above in which the compositions also comprise bioactive agents. Thus, for example, micelles can be prepared in the presence of a bioactive agent. In connection with lipid compositions which comprise a gas, the  
15 preparation can involve, for example, bubbling a gas directly into a mixture of the lipid compounds and one or more additional materials. Alternatively, the lipid compositions may be preformed from lipid compounds and gas or gaseous precursor. In the latter case, the bioactive agent is then added to the lipid composition prior to use. For example, an aqueous mixture of liposomes and gas may be prepared to which the bioactive agent is  
20 added and which is agitated to provide the liposome composition. The liposome composition can be readily isolated since the gas and/or bioactive agent filled liposome vesicles generally float to the top of the aqueous solution. Excess bioactive agent can be recovered from the remaining aqueous solution.

As one skilled in the art will recognize, any of the stabilizing materials and/or  
25 vesicle compositions may be lyophilized for storage, and reconstituted or rehydrated, for example, with an aqueous medium (such as sterile water, phosphate buffered solution, or aqueous saline solution), with the aid of vigorous agitation. Lyophilized preparations generally have the advantage of greater shelf life. To prevent agglutination or fusion of the lipids and/or vesicles as a result of lyophilization, it may be useful to include additives  
30 which prevent such fusion or agglutination from occurring. Additives which may be useful include sorbitol, mannitol, sodium chloride, glucose, trehalose, polyvinyl-pyrrolidone and poly(ethylene glycol) (PEG), for example, PEG 400. These and other

- 111 -

additives are described in the literature, such as in the U.S. Pharmacopeia, USP XXII, NF XVII, The United States Pharmacopeia, The National Formulary, United States Pharmacopeial Convention Inc., 12601 Twinbrook Parkway, Rockville, MD 20852, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

5       The concentration of lipid required to form a desired stabilized vesicle level will vary depending upon the type of lipid used, and may be readily determined by routine experimentation. For example, in preferred embodiments, the concentration of 1,2-dipalmitoylphosphatidylcholine (DPPC) used to form stabilized vesicles according to the methods of the present invention is about 0.1 mg/ml to about 30 mg/ml of saline solution, 10 more preferably from about 0.5 mg/ml to about 20 mg/ml of saline solution, and most preferably from about 1 mg/ml to about 10 mg/ml of saline solution. The concentration of distearoylphosphatidylcholine (DSPC) used in preferred embodiments is about 0.1 mg/ml to about 30 mg/ml of saline solution, more preferably from about 0.5 mg/ml to about 20 mg/ml of saline solution, and most preferably from about 1 mg/ml to about 10 mg/ml of 15 saline solution. The amount of composition which is administered to a patient can vary. Typically, the intravenous dose may be less than about 10 mL for a 70 Kg patient, with lower doses being preferred.

Another embodiment of preparing a targeted therapeutic prodrug composition comprises combining at least one biocompatible lipid and a gaseous precursor; agitating 20 until gas filled vesicles are formed; adding a prodrug and/or targeting ligand to the gas filled vesicles such that the prodrug and/or targeting ligand binds to the gas filled vesicle by a covalent bond or non-covalent bond; and agitating until a delivery vehicle comprising gas filled vesicles and a prodrug and/or targeting ligand result. Rather than agitating until gas filled vesicles are formed before adding the prodrug and/or targeting ligand, the 25 gaseous precursor may remain a gaseous precursor until the time of use. That is, the gaseous precursor is used to prepare the delivery vehicle and the precursor is activated *in vivo*, by temperature for example.

Alternatively, a method of preparing targeted therapeutic prodrug compositions may comprise combining at least one biocompatible lipid and a prodrug and/or targeting 30 ligand such that the prodrug and/or targeting ligand binds to the lipid by a covalent bond or non-covalent bond, adding a gaseous precursor and agitating until a delivery vehicle comprising gas-filled vesicles and a prodrug and/or targeting ligand result. In addition,

- 112 -

the gaseous precursor may be added and remain a gaseous precursor until the time of use. That is, the gaseous precursor is used to prepare the delivery vehicle having gaseous precursor filled vesicles and a prodrug and/or targeting ligand which result for use *in vivo*.

Alternatively, the gaseous precursors may be utilized to create stable gas filled vesicles with prodrugs and/or targeting ligands which are pre-formed prior to use. In this embodiment, the gaseous precursor and prodrug and/or targeting ligand are added to a container housing a suspending and/or stabilizing medium at a temperature below the liquid-gaseous phase transition temperature of the respective gaseous precursor. As the temperature is then exceeded, and an emulsion is formed between the gaseous precursor and liquid solution, the gaseous precursor undergoes transition from the liquid to the gaseous state. As a result of this heating and gas formation, the gas displaces the air in the head space above the liquid suspension so as to form gas filled lipid spheres which entrap the gas of the gaseous precursor, ambient gas for example, air, or coentrap gas state gaseous precursor and ambient air. This phase transition can be used for optimal mixing and stabilization of the delivery vehicle. For example, the gaseous precursor, perfluorobutane, can be entrapped in the biocompatible lipid or other stabilizing compound, and as the temperature is raised, beyond 4° C (boiling point of perfluorobutane) stabilizing compound entrapped fluorobutane gas results. As an additional example, the gaseous precursor fluorobutane, can be suspended in an aqueous suspension containing emulsifying and stabilizing agents such as glycerol or propylene glycol and vortexed on a commercial vortexer. Vortexing is commenced at a temperature low enough that the gaseous precursor is liquid and is continued as the temperature of the sample is raised past the phase transition temperature from the liquid to gaseous state. In so doing, the precursor converts to the gaseous state during the microemulsification process. In the presence of the appropriate stabilizing agents, surprisingly stable gas filled vesicles and prodrugs and/or targeting ligand result.

Accordingly, the gaseous precursors may be selected to form a gas filled vesicle *in vivo* or may be designed to produce the gas filled vesicle *in situ*, during the manufacturing process, on storage, or at some time prior to use.

According to the methods contemplated by the present invention, the presence of gas, such as and not limited to air, may also be provided by the local ambient atmosphere. The local ambient atmosphere may be the atmosphere within a sealed container, or in an

- 113 -

unsealed container, may be the external environment. Alternatively, for example, a gas may be injected into or otherwise added to the container having the aqueous lipid solution or into the aqueous lipid solution itself in order to provide a gas other than air. Gases that are not heavier than air may be added to a sealed container while gases heavier than air 5 may be added to a sealed or an unsealed container. Accordingly, the present invention includes co-entrapment of air and/or other gases along with gaseous precursors.

Hence, the stabilized vesicle precursors described above, can be used in the same manner as the other stabilized vesicles used in the present invention, once activated by application to the tissues of a host, where such factors as temperature or pH may be used 10 to cause generation of the gas. It is preferred that this embodiment is one wherein the gaseous precursors undergo phase transitions from liquid to gaseous states at or near the normal body temperature of said host, and are thereby activated by the temperature of said host tissues so as to undergo transition to the gaseous phase therein. More preferably still, this method is one wherein the host tissue is human tissue having a normal temperature of 15 about 37°C, and wherein the gaseous precursors undergo phase transitions from liquid to gaseous states near 37°C.

All of the above embodiments involving preparations of the stabilized gas filled vesicles used in the present invention, may be sterilized by autoclave or sterile filtration if these processes are performed before either the gas instillation step or prior to temperature 20 mediated gas conversion of the temperature sensitive gaseous precursors within the suspension. Alternatively, one or more anti-bactericidal agents and/or preservatives may be included in the formulation of the compositions, such as sodium benzoate, all quaternary ammonium salts, sodium azide, methyl paraben, propyl paraben, sorbic acid, ascorbylpalmitate, butylated hydroxyanisole, butylated hydroxytoluene, chlorobutanol, 25 dehydroacetic acid, ethylenediamine, monothioglycerol, potassium benzoate, potassium metabisulfite, potassium sorbate, sodium bisulfite, sulfur dioxide, and organic mercurial salts. Such sterilization, which may also be achieved by other conventional means, such as by irradiation, will be necessary where the stabilized microspheres are used for imaging under invasive circumstances, for example, intravascularly or intraperitoneally. The appropriate means of sterilization will be apparent to the artisan instructed by the present 30 description of the stabilized gas filled vesicles and their use. The compositions are generally stored as an aqueous suspension, but in the case of dried or lyophilized vesicles

or dried or lyophilized lipid spheres, the compositions may be stored as a dried or lyophilized powder ready to be reconstituted or rehydrated prior to use.

In accordance with the present invention, there are provided methods of delivering a bioactive agent, including prodrugs and delivery vehicles, to a patient and/or treating a condition in a patient, as well as imaging a patient and diagnosing the presence of diseased tissue in a patient. The imaging process of the present invention may be carried out by administering a composition of the invention to a patient, and then scanning the patient using, for example, ultrasound, computed tomography, and/or magnetic resonance imaging, to obtain visible images of an internal region of a patient and/or of any diseased tissue in that region. Diagnostic imaging includes promoting the rupture of delivery vehicles (such as vesicles) via the methods of the present invention. For example, ultrasound may be used to visualize the delivery vehicles and verify the localization of the delivery vehicles in certain tissue. In addition, ultrasound may be used to promote rupture of the delivery vehicles once they reach the intended target, including tissue and/or receptor destinations, thus releasing a bioactive agent, including a prodrug and/or other bioactive agent.

The compositions of the invention, including the prodrugs, may be administered to the patient by a variety of different means. The means of administration will vary depending upon the intended application. As one skilled in the art would recognize, administration of

the prodrug or the prodrug in combination with the stabilizing materials and/or vesicles of the present invention can be carried out in various fashions, for example, topically, including ophthalmic, dermal, ocular and rectal, intrarectally, transdermally, orally, intraperitoneally, parenterally, intravenously, intralymphatically, intratumorly, intramuscularly, interstitially, intra-arterially, subcutaneously, intraocularly, intrasynovially, transepithelially, transdermally, pulmonarily via inhalation, ophthalmically, sublingually, buccally, or nasal inhalation via insufflation or nebulization.

Ultrasound mediated targeting and drug release and activation using the prodrugs of the present invention is advantageous for treating a variety of different diseases and medical conditions, such as autoimmune diseases, organ transplants, arthritis, and myasthenia gravis. Following the systemic administration of the prodrug delivery vehicles to a patient, ultrasound may then be applied to the affected tissue. For arthritis, including

- 115 -

synovial-based inflammation arthritis, such as rheumatoid arthritis, ultrasound may be applied to the joints affected by the disease. For myasthenia gravis, ultrasound may be applied to the thymus. For transplant rejection, ultrasound may be applied to the organ transplant, such as in a kidney transplant. For the prevention or treatment of prostate cancer, antioxidant prodrugs, such as gas filled vesicles containing a conjugate of vitamin E and a DuPont Zonyl® surfactant, could be delivered to the site. Thereafter, continuous wave ultrasound at about 25 kHz may be applied to the prostate either transrectally or transurethrally. For treatment of cancer, chemotherapeutic prodrugs, such as a cytoxin-fluorolipid conjugate incorporated into acoustically active vesicles, may be administered to a patient with continuous wave ultrasound applied to the tumor. For example, in a patient with breast cancer, adriamycin-fluorolipid gas filled vesicles may be administered intravenously with ultrasound applied to the axilla to release the prodrug locally in the regional lymph nodes. For skin disease, such as severe eczema, dexamethasone prodrug vesicles can be administered intravenously with ultrasound applied to the affected skin. For fungal infections, prodrug vesicles containing amphotericin may be administered intravenously or subcutaneously. For treatment of thromboses, PEG-Telomer B-t-PA (tissue plasminogen activator) may be employed, where the prodrug is formulated into gas-filled vesicles, preferably containing targeting ligands directed to a component of the thrombosis. Thereafter, ultrasound may be applied to the region of thrombosis for either diagnostic imaging or to aid in rupturing the prodrug-containing vesicles or both. Local prodrug release may be accomplished through the intervention of ultrasound or intracellularly by the lysosomal apparatus of the target cells.

For topical applications, the prodrugs may be used alone, may be mixed with one or more solubilizing agents, such as dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO), or may be used with a delivery vehicle, and applied to the skin or mucosal membranes. Other penetrating and/or solubilizing agents useful for the topical application of the prodrug include, for example, pyrrolidones such as 2-pyrrolidone, N-methyl-2-pyrrolidone (NMP), 1-methyl-2-pyrrolidone, 5-methyl-2-pyrrolidone, 1-ethyl-2-pyrrolidone, 2-pyrrolidone-5-carboxylic acid, N-hydroxyethylpyrrolidone (HEP), N-cyclohexylpyrrolidone (CHP), N-dimethyl-aminopropylpyrrolidone (DAPP), N-cocacylpyrrolidone (CAP), N-tallowalkylpyrrolidone (TAP), 1-lauryl-2-pyrrolidone

- (LP), and 1-hyroxyl-2-pyrrolidone (HP); fatty acids such as oleic acid, linoleic acid, heptanoic acid, caproic acid, lauric acid, stearic acid, octadecenoic acid, palmitoleic acid, myristic acid and palmitelaidic acid; sulfoxides such as dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO), dimethyl-acetamide (DMAC), dimethylformamide (DMF),
- 5 N-methylformamide (NMF) and decylmethylsulfoxide (DCMS); amines and derivatives such as N,N-diethyl-m-toluamide, dodecylamine, ethoxylated amine, N,N-bis(2-hydroxy-ethyl)oleylamine, dodecyl-N,N-dimethyl-amino acetate, sodium pryoglutamate and N-hydroxylethalacetamide; terpenes and terpenoids such as a-pinenes, d-limonene, 3-carene, a-terpineol, terpinen-4-ol, careol, abisabolol, carvone,
- 10 pulegone, piperitone, menthone, fenchone, cyclohexene oxide, limonene oxide, pinene oxide, cyclopentene oxide, ascaridol, 7-oxabicyclo(2.2.1)heptane, 1,8-cineole, safrole, l-carvone, terpenoid cyclohexanone derivatives, acyclic terpenehydrocarbon chains, hydrocarbon terpenes, cyclic ether terpenes, cardamon seed extract, monoterpene terpineol and acetyl terpineol; essential oils of eucalyptus, chenopodium and yang ylang; surfactants
- 15 whether anionic-sodiumlaurylsulfate (SLS), phenylsulfurate CA, calciumdodecylbenzene sulfonate, empicol ML26/F and magnesiumlaurylsulfate; cationic-cetyltrimethylammonium bromide; nonionic-synperonic NP series and PE series and the polysorbates; or zwiterionic-N-dodecyl-N,N-dimethylbetaaine; alcohols such as ethanol, lauryl alcohol, linolenyl alcohol, 1-octanol, 1-propanol and 1-butanol; urea, cyclic unsaturated urea
- 20 analogs, glycols, azone, n-alkanols, n-alkanes, orgelase, alphaderm cream and water. The penetrating/solubilizing agents may or may not be in a base which can be composed of various substances known to those skilled in the art, including but not limited to: glycerol, propylene glycol (PG); isopropyl myristate; urea in propylene glycol, ethanol and water; and polyethylene glycol (PEG).
- 25 Prodrugs formulated with penetration enhancing agents, known to one skilled in the art and described above, may be administered transdermally in a patch or reservoir with a permeable membrane applied to the skin. The use of rupturing ultrasound may increase transdermal delivery of bioactive agents, including the prodrugs of the present invention. Further, a mechanism may be used to monitor and modulate delivery of the
- 30 prodrugs. For example, diagnostic ultrasound may be used to visually monitor the bursting of the gas filled vesicles and modulate drug delivery and/or a hydrophone may

be used to detect the sound of the bursting of the gas filled vesicles and modulate drug delivery.

The delivery of bioactive agents from the stabilizing materials of the present invention using ultrasound is best accomplished for tissues which have a good acoustic window 5 for the transmission of ultrasonic energy. This is the case for most tissues in the body such as muscle, the heart, the liver and most other vital structures. In the brain, in order to direct the ultrasonic energy past the skull a surgical window may be necessary.

Further, the gas filled vesicles of the invention are especially useful for bioactive agents that may be degraded in aqueous media or upon exposure to oxygen and/or 10 atmospheric air. For example, the vesicles may be filled with an inert gas such as nitrogen or argon, for use with labile bioactive agents. Additionally, the gas filled vesicles may be filled with an inert gas and used to encapsulate a labile bioactive agent for use in a region of a patient that would normally cause the bioactive agent to be exposed to atmospheric air, such as cutaneous and ophthalmic applications.

15 The invention is useful in delivering bioactive agents to a patient's lungs. For pulmonary applications of the prodrugs, dried or lyophilized powdered liposomes may be administered via inhaler. Aqueous suspensions of liposomes or micelles, preferably gas/gaseous precursor filled, may be administered via nebulization. Gas filled liposomes of the present invention are lighter than, for example, conventional liquid filled 20 liposomes which generally deposit in the central proximal airway rather than reaching the periphery of the lungs. It is therefore believed that the gas filled liposomes of the present invention may improve delivery of a bioactive agent to the periphery of the lungs, including the terminal airways and the alveoli. For application to the lungs, the gas filled liposomes may be applied through nebulization.

25 In applications such as the targeting of the lungs, which are lined with lipids, the bioactive agent may be released upon aggregation of the gas filled liposomes with the lipids lining the targeted tissue. Additionally, the gas filled liposomes may burst after administration without the use of ultrasound. Thus, ultrasound need not be applied to release the drug in the above type of administration.

30 For vascular administration the prodrugs are generally injected into the venous system as a formulation vehicle, e.g. preferably gas or gaseous precursor containing liposomes.

It is a further embodiment of this invention in which ultrasound activation affords site specific delivery of the prodrugs. Generally, the gas and/or gaseous precursor containing vehicles are echogenic and visible on ultrasound. Ultrasound can be used to image the target tissue and to monitor the drug carrying vehicles as they pass through the

5 treatment region. As increasing levels of ultrasound are applied to the treatment region, this breaks apart the delivery vehicles and/or releases the drug within the treatment region. "Release of the drug" includes: (1) the release of the prodrug from the delivery vehicle but not the release of the drug from the linking group and/or fluorinated amphiphilic moiety; (2) the release of the drug from the covalently bonded fluorinated

10 amphiphilic moiety and/or the linking group, but not from the delivery vehicle; and (3) the release of the drug from both the delivery vehicle and from the covalently bonded fluorinated amphiphilic moiety and/or the linking group. Preferably, "release of the drug" is (1) the release of the drug from the delivery vehicle but not from the linking group and/or fluorinated amphiphilic moiety or (3) the release of the drug from both the

15 delivery vehicle and from the covalently bonded fluorinated amphiphilic moiety and/or linking group.

Drug release and/or vesicle rupture can be monitored ultrasonically by several different mechanisms. As bubbles are destroyed this results in eventual dissolution of the ultrasound signal. Prior to signal dissolution, however, the vehicles provide an

20 initial burst of signal. In other words as increasing levels of ultrasound energy are applied to the treatment zone containing the vehicles, there is a transient increase in signal. This transient increase in signal may be recorded at the fundamental frequency, the harmonic, odd harmonic or ultraharmonic frequency.

Generally, the delivery systems of the present invention are administered in the form

25 of an aqueous suspension such as in water or a saline solution (e.g., phosphate buffered saline). Preferably, the water is sterile. Also, preferably the saline solution is an isotonic saline solution, although, if desired, the saline solution may be hypotonic (e.g., about 0.3 to about 0.5% NaCl). The solution may also be buffered, if desired, to provide a pH range of about pH 5 to about pH 7.4. In addition, dextrose may be

30 preferably included in the media. Further solutions that may be used for administration of gas filled liposomes comprise oils. Suitable oils include, for example, almond oil, corn oil, cottonseed oil, ethyl oleate, isopropyl myristate, isopropyl palmitate, mineral

- 119 -

oil, myristyl alcohol, octyldodecanol, olive oil, peanut oil, persic oil, sesame oil, soybean oil, squalene, myristyl oleate, cetyl oleate, myristyl palmitate, canola oil and safflower oil. Any of the oils described herein may be fluorinated, including polyfluorinated, as would be recognized by one skilled in the art in view of the present disclosure. Other suitable fluorinated oils are described in U.S. Patent No. 5,344,930, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference herein in its entirety.

The size of the stabilizing materials and/or vesicles of the present invention will depend upon the intended use. With smaller liposomes, resonant frequency ultrasound will generally be higher than for the larger liposomes. Sizing also serves to modulate resultant liposomal biodistribution and clearance. In addition to filtration, the size of the liposomes can be adjusted, if desired, by procedures known to one skilled in the art, such as shaking, microemulsification, vortexing, filtration, repeated freezing and thawing cycles, extrusion, extrusion under pressure through pores of a defined size, sonication, homogenization, the use of a laminar stream of a core of liquid introduced into an immiscible sheath of liquid. See, for example, U.S. Patent Nos. 4,728,578, 4,728,575, 4,737,323, 4,533,254, 4,162,282, 4,310,505 and 4,921,706; U.K. Patent Application GB 2193095 A; International Applications PCT/US85/01161 and PCT/US89/05040; Mayer et al., *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, 858:161-168 (1986); Hope et al., *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, 812:55-65 (1985); Mayhew et al., *Methods in Enzymology*, 149:64-77 (1987); Mayhew et al., *Biochimica et Biophysica Acta*, 755:169-74 (1984); Cheng et al, *Investigative Radiology*, 22:47-55 (1987); *Liposomes Technology*, Gregoriadis, G., ed., Vol. I, pp. 29-37, 51-67 and 79-108 (CRC Press Inc, Boca Raton, FL, 1984). The disclosures of each of the foregoing patents, publications and patent applications are hereby incorporated by reference herein in their entirety.

Extrusion under pressure through pores of defined size is a preferred method of adjusting the size of the liposomes.

Since vesicle size influences biodistribution, different size vesicles may be selected for various purposes. For example, for intravascular application, the preferred size range is a mean outside diameter between about 30 nm and about 10  $\mu\text{m}$ , with the preferable mean outside diameter being about 5  $\mu\text{m}$ . More specifically, for intravascular application, the size of the vesicles is preferably about 10  $\mu\text{m}$  or less in mean outside diameter, and preferably less than about 7  $\mu\text{m}$ , and more preferably less than about 5

- μm in mean outside diameter. Preferably, the vesicles are no smaller than about 30 nanometers in mean outside diameter. To provide therapeutic delivery to organs such as the liver and to allow differentiation of tumor from normal tissue, smaller vesicles, between about 30 nanometers and about 100 nm in mean outside diameter, are
- 5 preferred. For embolization of a tissue such as the kidney or the lung, the vesicles are preferably less than about 200 μm in mean outside diameter. For intranasal, intrarectal or topical administration, the vesicles are preferably less than about 100 microns in mean outside diameter. Large vesicles, e.g., between 1 and 10 μm in size, will generally be confined to the intravascular space until they are cleared by phagocytic
- 10 elements lining the vessels, such as the macrophages and Kupffer cells lining capillary sinusoids. For passage to the cells beyond the sinusoids, smaller vesicles, for example, less than about a micron in mean outside diameter, e.g., less than about 300 nm in size, may be utilized. In preferred embodiments, the vesicles are administered individually, rather than embedded in a matrix, for example.
- 15 For *in vitro* use, such as cell culture applications, the gas filled vesicles may be added to the cells in cultures and then incubated. Subsequently sonic energy can be applied to the culture media containing the cells and liposomes.
- In carrying out the imaging methods of the present invention, the stabilizing materials and vesicle compositions can be used alone, or in combination with diagnostic,
- 20 therapeutic or other agents. Such other agents include excipients such as flavoring or coloring materials, which would be known to one skilled in the art.
- In the case of diagnostic applications, such as ultrasound and CT, energy, such as ultrasonic energy, is applied to at least a portion of the patient to image the target tissue. A visible image of an internal region of the patient is then obtained, such that
- 25 the presence or absence of diseased tissue can be ascertained. With respect to ultrasound, ultrasonic imaging techniques, including second harmonic imaging, and gated imaging, are well known in the art, and are described, for example, in Uhlendorf, "Physics of Ultrasound Contrast Imaging: Scattering in the Linear Range", *IEEE Transactions on Ultrasonics, Ferroelectrics, and Frequency Control*, Vol. 14(1), pp. 70-
- 30 79 (1994) and Sutherland, *et al.*, "Color Doppler Myocardial Imaging: A New Technique for the Assessment of Myocardial Function", *Journal of the American*

*Society of Echocardiography*, Vol. 7(5), pp. 441-458 (1994), the disclosures of each of which are hereby incorporated herein by reference in their entirety.

Ultrasound can be used for both diagnostic and therapeutic purposes. In diagnostic ultrasound, ultrasound waves or a train of pulses of ultrasound may be applied with a transducer. The ultrasound is generally pulsed rather than continuous, although it may be continuous, if desired. Thus, diagnostic ultrasound generally involves the application of a pulse of echoes, after which, during a listening period, the ultrasound transducer receives reflected signals. Harmonics, ultraharmonics or subharmonics may be used. The second harmonic mode may be beneficially employed, in which the  $2x$  frequency is received, where  $x$  is the incidental frequency. This may serve to decrease the signal from the background material and enhance the signal from the transducer using the targeted contrast media of the present invention which may be targeted to the desired site, for example, blood clots. Other harmonic signals, such as odd harmonics signals, for example,  $3x$  or  $5x$ , would be similarly received using this method. Subharmonic signals, for example,  $x/2$  and  $x/3$ , may also be received and processed so as to form an image.

In addition to the pulsed method, continuous wave ultrasound, for example, Power Doppler, may be applied. This may be particularly useful where rigid vesicles, for example, vesicles formulated from polymethyl methacrylate, are employed. In this case, the relatively higher energy of the Power Doppler may be made to resonate the vesicles and thereby promote their rupture. This can create acoustic emissions which may be in the subharmonic or ultraharmonic range or, in some cases, in the same frequency as the applied ultrasound. It is contemplated that there will be a spectrum of acoustic signatures released in this process and the transducer so employed may receive the acoustic emissions to detect, for example, the presence of a clot. In addition, the process of vesicle rupture may be employed to transfer kinetic energy to the surface, for example of a clot to promote clot lysis. Thus, therapeutic thrombolysis may be achieved during a combination of diagnostic and therapeutic ultrasound. Spectral Doppler may also be employed. In general, the levels of energy from diagnostic ultrasound are insufficient to promote the rupture of vesicles and to facilitate release and cellular uptake of the bioactive agents. As noted above, diagnostic ultrasound may involve the application of one or more pulses of sound. Pauses between pulses permits

- 122 -

the reflected sonic signals to be received and analyzed. The limited number of pulses used in diagnostic ultrasound limits the effective energy which is delivered to the tissue that is being studied.

Higher energy ultrasound, for example, ultrasound which is generated by therapeutic 5 ultrasound equipment, is generally capable of causing rupture of the vesicle composition. In general, devices for therapeutic ultrasound employ from about 10 to about 100% duty cycles, depending on the area of tissue to be treated with the ultrasound. Areas of the body which are generally characterized by larger amounts of muscle mass, for example, backs and thighs, as well as highly vascularized tissues, such 10 as heart tissue, may require a larger duty cycle, for example, up to about 100%.

In therapeutic ultrasound, continuous wave ultrasound is used to deliver higher energy levels. For the rupture of vesicles, continuous wave ultrasound is preferred, although the sound energy may also be pulsed. If pulsed sound energy is used, the sound will generally be pulsed in echo train lengths of from about 8 to about 20 or more pulses at 15 a time. Preferably, the echo train lengths are about 20 pulses at a time. In addition, the frequency of the sound used may vary from about 0.025 to about 100 megahertz (MHz). In general, frequency for therapeutic ultrasound preferably ranges between about 0.75 and about 3 MHz, with from about 1 and about 2 MHz being more preferred. In addition, energy levels may vary from about 0.5 Watt (W) per square 20 centimeter ( $\text{cm}^2$ ) to about 5.0 W/ $\text{cm}^2$ , with energy levels of from about 0.5 to about 2.5 W/ $\text{cm}^2$  being preferred. Energy levels for therapeutic ultrasound involving hyperthermia are generally from about 5 W/ $\text{cm}^2$  to about 50 W/ $\text{cm}^2$ . For very small vesicles, for example, vesicles having a diameter of less than about 0.5  $\mu\text{m}$ , higher frequencies of sound are generally preferred because smaller vesicles are capable of 25 absorbing sonic energy more effectively at higher frequencies of sound. When very high frequencies are used, for example, greater than about 10 MHz, the sonic energy will generally penetrate fluids and tissues to a limited depth only. Thus, external application of the sonic energy may be suitable for skin and other superficial tissues. However, it is generally necessary for deep structures to focus the ultrasonic energy so 30 that it is preferentially directed within a focal zone. Alternatively, the ultrasonic energy may be applied via interstitial probes, intravascular ultrasound catheters or endoluminal catheters. Such probes or catheters may be used, for example, in the esophagus for the diagnosis and/or treatment of esophageal carcinoma. In addition to the therapeutic uses

- 123 -

discussed above, the present compositions can be employed in connection with esophageal carcinoma or in the coronary arteries for the treatment of atherosclerosis, as well as the therapeutic uses described, for example, in U.S. Patent No. 5,149,319, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference herein in its entirety.

5     A therapeutic ultrasound device may be used which employs two frequencies of ultrasound. The first frequency may be  $x$ , and the second frequency may be  $2x$ . In preferred form, the device would be designed such that the focal zones of the first and second frequencies converge to a single focal zone. The focal zone of the device may then be directed to the targeted compositions, for example, targeted vesicle  
10    compositions, within the targeted tissue. This ultrasound device may provide second harmonic therapy with simultaneous application of the  $x$  and  $2x$  frequencies of ultrasound energy. It is contemplated that, in the case of ultrasound involving vesicles, this second harmonic therapy may provide improved rupturing of vesicles as compared to ultrasound energy involving a single frequency. Also, it is contemplated that the  
15    preferred frequency range may reside within the fundamental harmonic frequencies of the vesicles. Lower energy may also be used with this device. An ultrasound device which may be employed in connection with the aforementioned second harmonic therapy is described, for example, by Kawabata, et al., *Ultrasonics Sonochemistry*, 3:1-5 (1996), the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference herein in its  
20    entirety.

For use in ultrasonic imaging, preferably, the vesicles of the invention possess a reflectivity of greater than 2 dB, more preferably between about 4 dB and about 20 dB. Within these ranges, the highest reflectivity for the vesicles of the invention is exhibited by the larger vesicles, by higher concentrations of vesicles, and/or when higher  
25    ultrasound frequencies are employed.

For therapeutic drug delivery, the rupturing of the prodrug containing vesicle compositions and/or liposomes of the invention is surprisingly easily carried out by applying ultrasound of a certain frequency to the region of the patient where therapy is desired, after the liposomes have been administered to or have otherwise reached that  
30    region, e.g., via delivery with targeting ligands. Specifically, it has been unexpectedly found that when ultrasound is applied at a frequency corresponding to the peak resonant frequency of the prodrug containing gas filled vesicles, the vesicles will rupture and

- 124 -

release their contents. The peak resonant frequency can be determined either *in vivo* or *in vitro*, but preferably *in vivo*, by exposing the stabilizing materials or vesicles, including liposomes, to ultrasound, receiving the reflected resonant frequency signals and analyzing the spectrum of signals received to determine the peak, using  
5 conventional means. The peak, as so determined, corresponds to the peak resonant frequency, or second harmonic, as it is sometimes termed.

Preferably, the stabilizing materials and/or vesicle compositions of the invention have a peak resonant frequency of between about 0.5 MHz and about 10 MHz. Of course, the peak resonant frequency of the gas filled vesicles of the invention will vary  
10 depending on the outside diameter and, to some extent, the elasticity or flexibility of the liposomes, with the larger and more elastic or flexible liposomes having a lower resonant frequency than the smaller and less elastic or flexible vesicles.

The prodrug containing gas filled vesicles will also rupture when exposed to non-peak resonant frequency ultrasound in combination with a higher intensity (wattage) and  
15 duration (time). This higher energy, however, results in greatly increased heating, which may not be desirable. By adjusting the frequency of the energy to match the peak resonant frequency, the efficiency of rupture and prodrug and/or bioactive agent release is improved, appreciable tissue heating does not generally occur (frequently no increase in temperature above about 2°C), and less overall energy is required. Thus,  
20 application of ultrasound at the peak resonant frequency, while not required, is most preferred.

For diagnostic or therapeutic ultrasound, any of the various types of diagnostic ultrasound imaging devices may be employed in the practice of the invention, the particular type or model of the device not being critical to the method of the invention.  
25 Also suitable are devices designed for administering ultrasonic hyperthermia, such devices being described in U.S. Patent Nos. 4,620,546, 4,658,828, and 4,586,512, the disclosures of each of which are hereby incorporated herein by reference in their entirety. Preferably, the device employs a resonant frequency (RF) spectral analyzer. The transducer probes may be applied externally or may be implanted. Ultrasound is  
30 generally initiated at lower intensity and duration, and then intensity, time, and/or resonant frequency increased until the vesicle is visualized on ultrasound (for diagnostic ultrasound applications) or ruptures (for therapeutic ultrasound applications).

- 125 -

Although application of the various principles will be readily apparent to one skilled in the art, in view of the present disclosure, by way of general guidance, for gas filled vesicles of about 1.5 to about 10  $\mu\text{m}$  in mean outside diameter, the resonant frequency will generally be in the range of about 1 to about 10 MHz. By adjusting the focal zone 5 to the center of the target tissue (e.g., the tumor) the gas filled vesicles can be visualized under real time ultrasound as they accumulate within the target tissue. Using the 7.5 MHz curved array transducer as an example, adjusting the power delivered to the transducer to maximum and adjusting the focal zone within the target tissue, the spatial peak temporal average (SPTA) power will then be a maximum of approximately 10 5.31 mW/cm<sup>2</sup> in water. This power will cause some release of the prodrug from the gas filled vesicles, but much greater release can be accomplished by using higher power.

By switching the transducer to the doppler mode, higher power outputs are available, up to 2.5 W/cm<sup>2</sup> from the same transducer. With the machine operating in doppler 15 mode, the power can be delivered to a selected focal zone within the target tissue and the gas filled vesicles can be made to release the prodrug and/or bioactive agent. Selecting the transducer to match the resonant frequency of the gas filled vesicles will make this process of prodrug release even more efficient.

For larger diameter gas filled vesicles, e.g., greater than 3  $\mu\text{m}$  in mean outside 20 diameter, a lower frequency transducer may be more effective in accomplishing therapeutic release. For example, a lower frequency transducer of 3.5 MHz (20 mm curved array model) may be selected to correspond to the resonant frequency of the gas filled vesicles. Using this transducer, 101.6 milliwatts per cm<sup>2</sup> may be delivered to the focal spot, and switching to doppler mode will increase the power output (SPTA) to 25 1.02 W/cm<sup>2</sup>.

To use the phenomenon of cavitation to release and/or activate the prodrugs within the gas filled stabilizing materials and/or vesicles, lower frequency energies may be used, as cavitation occurs more effectively at lower frequencies. Using a 0.757 MHz transducer driven with higher voltages (as high as 300 volts) cavitation of solutions of gas-filled 30 liposomes will occur at thresholds of about 5.2 atmospheres.

The ranges of energies transmitted to tissues from diagnostic ultrasound on commonly used instruments, such as the Piconics Inc. (Tyngsboro, MA) Portascan general purpose

- 126 -

scanner with receiver pulser 1966 Model 661; the Picker (Cleveland, OH) Echoview 8L Scanner including 80C System or the Medisonics (Mountain View, CA) Model D-9 Versatone Bidirectional Doppler, are known in the art and described, for example, by Carson et al., Ultrasound in Med. & Biol., 3:341-350 (1978), the disclosure of which is 5 hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. In general, the ranges of energies employed in pulse repetition are useful for diagnosis and monitoring gas-filled liposomes but are insufficient to rupture the gas-filled liposomes of the present invention.

Either fixed frequency or modulated frequency ultrasound may be used. Fixed 10 frequency is defined wherein the frequency of the sound wave is constant over time. A modulated frequency is one in which the wave frequency changes over time, for example, from high to low (PRICH) or from low to high (CHIRP). For example, a PRICH pulse with an initial frequency of 10 MHz of sonic energy is swept to 1 MHz with increasing power from 1 to 5 watts. Focused, frequency modulated, high energy 15 ultrasound may increase the rate of local gaseous expansion within the liposomes and rupturing to provide local delivery of prodrugs and/or bioactive agents.

The frequency of the sound used may vary from about 0.025 to about 100 MHz. Frequency ranges between about 0.75 and about 3 MHz are preferred and frequencies between about 1 and about 2 MHz are most preferred. Commonly used therapeutic 20 frequencies of about 0.75 to about 1.5 MHz may be used. Commonly used diagnostic frequencies of about 3 to about 7.5 MHz may also be used. For very small vesicles, e.g., below 0.5  $\mu\text{m}$  in mean outside diameter, higher frequencies of sound may be preferred as these smaller vesicles will absorb sonic energy more effectively at higher frequencies of sound. When very high frequencies are used, e.g., over 10 MHz, the 25 sonic energy will generally have limited depth penetration into fluids and tissues. External application may be preferred for the skin and other superficial tissues, but for deep structures, the application of sonic energy via interstitial probes or intravascular ultrasound catheters may be preferred.

Where the gas filled stabilizing materials and/or vesicles are used for drug 30 delivery, the bioactive agent (which includes prodrugs and targeting ligands, as defined above) to be delivered may be embedded within the wall(s) of the vesicle, encapsulated in the vesicle, attached to the surface of the vesicle and/or any combination thereof.

The phrase "attached to" or variations thereof, as used herein in connection with the location of the bioactive agent, means that the bioactive agent is linked in some manner to the inside and/or the outside wall of the microsphere, such as through a covalent or 5 ionic bond or other means of chemical or electrochemical linkage or interaction. The phrase "encapsulated in variations thereof" as used in connection with the location of the bioactive agent denotes that the bioactive agent is located in the internal microsphere void. The phrase "embedded within" or variations thereof as used in connection with the location of the bioactive agent, signifies the positioning of the bioactive agent within the vesicle wall(s) or layer(s). The phrase "comprising a 10 bioactive agent" denotes all of the varying types of therapeutic positioning in connection with the vesicle. Thus, the bioactive agent can be positioned variably, such as, for example, entrapped within the internal void of the gas filled vesicle, situated between the gas and the internal wall of the gas filled vesicle, incorporated onto the external surface of the gas filled vesicle, enmeshed within the vesicle structure itself and/or any 15 combination thereof. The delivery vehicles may also be designed so that there is a symmetric or an asymmetric distribution of the drug both inside and outside of the stabilizing material and/or vesicle.

Any of a variety of bioactive agents may be encapsulated in the vesicles. By 20 bioactive agent, it is meant an agent having beneficial effect on the patient, as defined above. If desired, more than one bioactive agent may be applied using the vesicles. For example, a single vesicle may contain more than one bioactive agent or vesicles containing different bioactive agents may be co-administered. By way of example, a monoclonal antibody capable of binding to melanoma antigen and an oligonucleotide encoding at least a portion of IL-2 may be administered at the same time. The phrase 25 "at least a portion of," as used herein, means that the entire gene need not be represented by the oligonucleotide, so long as the portion of the gene represented provides an effective block to gene expression. In a preferred embodiment, at least one of the bioactive agents is a prodrug of the present invention. In another preferred embodiment, at least one bioactive agent is a prodrug of the present invention and 30 another bioactive agent is a targeting ligand of the present invention. In addition to the prodrugs and/or targeting ligands of the present invention, other bioactive agents may be used in combination with the delivery vehicles of the present invention. Such

bioactive agents include those that are defined and exemplified as "D" in formula (I) above.

Genetic and bioactive materials may be incorporated into the internal gas filled space of these vesicles during the gas installation process or into or onto the vesicle

5 membranes of these particles. Incorporation onto the surface of these particles is preferred. Genetic materials and bioactive agents with a high octanol/water partition coefficient may be incorporated directly into the layer or wall surrounding the gas but incorporation onto the surface of the gas filled vesicles is more preferred. To accomplish this, groups capable of binding genetic materials or bioactive materials are  
10 generally incorporated into the stabilizing material layers which will then bind these materials. In the case of genetic materials (DNA, RNA, both single stranded and double stranded and anti-sense and sense oligonucleotides) this is readily accomplished through the use of cationic lipids or cationic polymers which may be incorporated into the dried lipid starting materials.

15 Other preferred therapeutics include genetic material such as nucleic acids, RNA, and DNA, of either natural or synthetic origin, including recombinant RNA and DNA and antisense RNA and DNA. Types of genetic material that may be used include, for example, genes carried on expression vectors such as plasmids, phagemids, cosmids, yeast artificial chromosomes (YACs), and defective or "helper" viruses, antigenic nucleic  
20 acids, both single and double stranded RNA and DNA and analogs thereof, such as phosphoro-thioate and phosphorodithioate oligodeoxynucleotides. Additionally, the genetic material may be combined, for example, with proteins or other polymers.

Examples of genetic therapeutics that may be applied using the liposomes of the present invention include DNA encoding at least a portion of an HLA gene, DNA encoding at  
25 least a portion of dystrophin, DNA encoding at least a portion of CFTR, DNA encoding at least a portion of IL-2, DNA encoding at least a portion of TNF, an antisense oligonucleotide capable of binding the DNA encoding at least a portion of *Ras*.

DNA encoding certain proteins may be used in the treatment of many different types of diseases. For example, adenosine deaminase may be provided to treat ADA  
30 deficiency; tumor necrosis factor and/or interleukin-2 may be provided to treat advanced cancers; HDL receptor may be provided to treat liver disease; thymidine kinase may be provided to treat ovarian cancer, brain tumors, or HIV infection; HLA-B7 may be

provided to treat malignant melanoma; interleukin-2 may be provided to treat neuroblastoma, malignant melanoma, or kidney cancer; interleukin-4 may be provided to treat cancer; HIV *env* may be provided to treat HIV infection; antisense *ras/p53* may be provided to treat lung cancer, and Factor VIII may be provided to treat Hemophilia

- 5 5 B. See, for example, *Science* 258, 744-746

A gas filled vesicle filled with oxygen gas should create extensive free radicals with cavitation. Also, metal ions from the transition series, especially manganese, iron and copper can increase the rate of formation of reactive oxygen intermediates from oxygen. By encapsulating metal ions within the vesicles, the formation of free radicals 10 *in vivo* can be increased. These metal ions may be incorporated into the liposomes as free salts, as complexes, e.g., with EDTA, DTPA, DOTA or desferrioxamine, or as oxides of the metal ions. Additionally, derivatized complexes of the metal ions may be bound to lipid head groups, or lipophilic complexes of the ions may be incorporated 15 into a lipid bilayer, for example. When exposed to thermal stimulation, e.g., cavitation, these metal ions then will increase the rate of formation of reactive oxygen intermediates. Further, radiosensitizers such as metronidazole and misonidazole may be incorporated into the gas filled vesicles to create free radicals on thermal stimulation.

By way of an example of the use of the prodrugs of the present invention, an acylated chemical group may be bound to the bioactive agent via an ester linkage which 20 would readily cleave *in vivo* by enzymatic action in serum. The acylated prodrug is incorporated into the gas filled vesicle of the invention. As an embodiment of the present invention, the prodrug is delivered to the appropriate tissue or receptor via a targeting ligand. Upon reaching the desired tissue or receptor, the gas filled vesicle is ruptured or popped by the sonic pulse from the ultrasound, and the prodrug 25 encapsulated by the vesicle is then exposed to the serum. The ester linkage is then cleaved by esterases in the serum, thereby generating the drug. However, it is not necessary for the bioactive agent to be cleaved from the acylated chemical group and ester linkage in order for the bioactive agent to be therapeutically effective. In other words, the prodrug may retain the bioactivity of the bioactive agent.

30 Similarly, ultrasound may be utilized not only to rupture the gas filled vesicle, but also to cause thermal effects which may increase the rate of the chemical cleavage and the release of the active bioactive agent from the prodrug (e.g., release of the

- 130 -

- bioactive agent from the linking group and fluorinated amphiphilic moiety). The particular chemical structure of the prodrug may be selected or modified to achieve desired solubility such that the prodrug may either be encapsulated within the internal gas filled space of the vesicle, attached to the surface of the vesicle or embedded within 5 the vesicle. The surface-bound prodrug may bear one or more acyl chains such that, when the vesicle is ruptured or heated or ruptured via cavitation, the acylated prodrug may then leave the surface and/or the bioactive agent may be cleaved from the acyl chains. Similarly, other prodrugs may be formulated with a hydrophobic group which is aromatic or sterol in structure to incorporate into the surface of the vesicle.
- 10 As discussed above, the delivery vehicles and stabilizing materials of the present invention may be used in connection with diagnostic imaging, therapeutic imaging and drug delivery, including, for example, ultrasound (US), magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR), computed tomography (CT), electron spin resonance (ESR), nuclear medical imaging, optical imaging, elastography, drug delivery 15 with ultrasound, radiofrequency (RF) and microwave laser. The delivery vehicles and stabilizing materials of the present invention may be used in combination with various contrast agents, including conventional contrast agents, which may serve to increase their effectiveness as contrast agents for diagnostic and therapeutic imaging.

Examples of suitable contrast agents for use in combination with the 20 present stabilizing materials include, for example, stable free radicals, such as, stable nitroxides, as well as compounds comprising transition, lanthanide and actinide elements, which may, if desired, be in the form of a salt or may be covalently or non-covalently bound to complexing agents, including lipophilic derivatives thereof, or to proteinaceous macromolecules. Preferable transition, lanthanide and actinide elements 25 include, for example, Gd(III), Mn(II), Cu(II), Cr(III), Fe(II), Fe(III), Co(II), Er(II), Ni(II), Eu(III) and Dy(III). More preferably, the elements may be Gd(III), Mn(II), Cu(II), Fe(II), Fe(III), Eu(III) and Dy(III), most preferably Mn(II) and Gd(III). The foregoing elements may be in the form of a salt, including inorganic salts, such as a manganese salt, for example, manganese chloride, manganese carbonate, manganese 30 acetate, and organic salts, such as manganese gluconate and manganese hydroxylapatite. Other exemplary salts include salts of iron, such as iron sulfides, and ferric salts, such as ferric chloride.

- 131 -

The above elements may also be bound, for example, through covalent or noncovalent association, to complexing agents, including lipophilic derivatives thereof, or to proteinaceous macromolecules. Preferable complexing agents include, for example, diethylenetriaminepentaacetic acid (DTPA), ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA), 1,4,7,10-tetraazacyclododecane-N,N',N'',N'''-tetraacetic acid (DOTA), 1,4,7,10-tetraazacyclododecane-N,N',N'',N'''-triacetic acid (DOTA), 3,6,9-triaza-12-oxa-3,6,9-tricarboxymethylene-10-carboxy-13-phenyltridecanoic acid (B-19036), hydroxybenzyl-ethylenediamine diacetic acid (HBED), N,N'-bis(pyridoxyl-5-phosphate)ethylene diamine, N,N'-diacetate (DPDP), 1,4,7-triazacyclononane-N,N',N'''-triacetic acid (NOTA), 1,4,8,11-tetraazacyclotetradecane-N,N',N'',N''''-tetraacetic acid (TETA), kryptands (macrocyclic complexes), and desferrioxamine. More preferably, the complexing agents are EDTA, DTPA, DOTA, DO3A and kryptands, most preferably DTPA. Preferable lipophilic complexes include alkylated derivatives of the complexing agents EDTA, DOTA, for example, N,N'-bis-(carboxydecylamidomethyl-N-2,3-dihydroxypropyl)ethylenediamine-N,N'-diacetate (EDTA-DDP); N,N'-bis-(carboxyoctadecylamidomethyl-N-2,3-dihydroxypropyl)ethylenediamine-N,N'-diacetate (EDTA-ODP); and N,N'-Bis(carboxy-laurylamidomethyl-N-2,3-dihydroxypropyl)ethylenediamine-N,N'-diacetate (EDTA-LDP); including those described in U.S. Patent No. 5,312,617, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated herein by reference in its entirety. Preferable proteinaceous macromolecules include, for example, albumin, collagen, polyarginine, polylysine, polyhistidine,  $\gamma$ -globulin and  $\beta$ -globulin, with albumin, polyarginine, polylysine, and polyhistidine being more preferred. Suitable complexes therefore include Mn(II)-DTPA, Mn(II)-EDTA, Mn(II)-DOTA, Mn(II)-DO3A, Mn(II)-kryptands, Gd(III)-DTPA, Gd(III)-DOTA, Gd(III)-DO3A, Gd(III)-kryptands, Cr(III)-EDTA, Cu(II)-EDTA, or iron-desferrioxamine, more preferably Mn(II)-DTPA or Gd(III)-DTPA.

Nitroxides are paramagnetic contrast agents which increase both T1 and T2 relaxation rates on MRI by virtue of the presence of an unpaired electron in the nitroxide molecule. As known to one of ordinary skill in the art, the paramagnetic effectiveness of a given compound as an MRI contrast agent may be related, at least in part, to the number of unpaired electrons in the paramagnetic nucleus or molecule, and specifically, to the square of the number of unpaired electrons. For example,

- 132 -

gadolinium has seven unpaired electrons whereas a nitroxide molecule has one unpaired electron. Thus, gadolinium is generally a much stronger MRI contrast agent than a nitroxide. However, effective correlation time, another important parameter for assessing the effectiveness of contrast agents, confers potential increased relaxivity to 5 the nitroxides. When the tumbling rate is slowed, for example, by attaching the paramagnetic contrast agent to a large molecule, it will tumble more slowly and thereby more effectively transfer energy to hasten relaxation of the water protons. In gadolinium, however, the electron spin relaxation time is rapid and will limit the extent to which slow rotational correlation times can increase relaxivity. For nitroxides, 10 however, the electron spin correlation times are more favorable and tremendous increases in relaxivity may be attained by slowing the rotational correlation time of these molecules. The gas filled vesicles of the present invention are ideal for attaining the goals of slowed rotational correlation times and resultant improvement in relaxivity. Although not intending to be bound by any particular theory of operation, it is 15 contemplated that since the nitroxides may be designed to coat the perimeters of the vesicles, for example, by making alkyl derivatives thereof, the resulting correlation times can be optimized. Moreover, the resulting contrast medium of the present invention may be viewed as a magnetic sphere, a geometric configuration which maximizes relaxivity.

Exemplary superparamagnetic contrast agents suitable for use in the 20 compositions of the present invention include metal oxides and sulfides which experience a magnetic domain, ferro- or ferrimagnetic compounds, such as pure iron, magnetic iron oxide, such as magnetite,  $\gamma\text{-Fe}_2\text{O}_3$ ,  $\text{Fe}_3\text{O}_4$ , manganese ferrite, cobalt ferrite and nickel ferrite. Paramagnetic gases can also be employed in the present 25 compositions, such as oxygen 17 gas ( $^{17}\text{O}_2$ ). In addition, hyperpolarized xenon, neon, or helium gas may also be employed. MR whole body imaging may then be employed to rapidly screen the body, for example, for thrombosis, and ultrasound may be applied, if desired, to aid in thrombolysis.

The contrast agents, such as the paramagnetic and superparamagnetic 30 contrast agents described above, may be employed as a component within the delivery vehicles and/or stabilizing materials. With respect to vesicles, the contrast agents may be entrapped within the internal void thereof, administered as a solution with the

vesicles, incorporated with any additional stabilizing materials, or coated onto the surface or membrane of the vesicle. Mixtures of any one or more of the paramagnetic agents and/or superparamagnetic agents in the present compositions may be used. The paramagnetic and superparamagnetic agents may also be coadministered separately, if desired.

If desired, the paramagnetic or superparamagnetic agents may be delivered as alkylated or other derivatives incorporated into the compositions, especially the lipidic walls of the vesicles. In particular, the nitroxides 2,2,5,5-tetramethyl-1-pyrrolidinyloxy, free radical and 2,2,6,6-tetramethyl-1-piperidinyloxy, free radical, can form adducts with long chain fatty acids at the positions of the ring which are not occupied by the methyl groups via a variety of linkages, including, for example, an acyloxy linkage. Such adducts are very amenable to incorporation into the lipid and/or vesicle compositions of the present invention.

The stabilizing materials and/or vesicles of the present invention, and especially the vesicles, may serve not only as effective carriers of the superparamagnetic agents described above, but also may improve the effect of the susceptibility contrast agents. Superparamagnetic contrast agents include metal oxides, particularly iron oxides but including manganese oxides, and as iron oxides, containing varying amounts of manganese, cobalt and nickel which experience a magnetic domain. These agents are nano or microparticles and have very high bulk susceptibilities and transverse relaxation rates. The larger particles, for example, particles having diameters of about 100 nm, have much higher R<sub>2</sub> relaxivities as compared to R<sub>1</sub> relaxivities. The smaller particles, for example, particles having diameters of about 10 to about 15 nm, have somewhat lower R<sub>2</sub> relaxivities, but much more balanced R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>2</sub> values. Much smaller particles, for example, monocrystalline iron oxide particles having diameters of about 3 to about 5 nm, have lower R<sub>2</sub> relaxivities, but probably the most balanced R<sub>1</sub> and R<sub>2</sub> relaxation rates. Ferritin can also be formulated to encapsulate a core of very high relaxation rate superparamagnetic iron. It has been discovered that the lipid and/or vesicle compositions, especially vesicle compositions, including gas filled vesicles, can increase the efficacy and safety of these conventional iron oxide based MRI contrast agents.

- 134 -

The iron oxides may simply be incorporated into the stabilizing materials and/or vesicles. Preferably, in the case of vesicles formulated from lipids, the iron oxides may be incorporated into the walls of the vesicles, for example, by being adsorbed onto the surfaces of the vesicles, or entrapped within the interior of the  
5 vesicles.

Without being bound to any particular theory or theories of operation, it is believed that the vesicles of the present invention increase the efficacy of the superparamagnetic contrast agents by several mechanisms. First, it is believed that the vesicles function to increase the apparent magnetic concentration of the iron oxide  
10 particles. Also, it is believed that the vesicles increase the apparent rotational correlation time of the MRI contrast agents, including paramagnetic and superparamagnetic agents, so that relaxation rates are increased. In addition, the vesicles appear to increase the apparent magnetic domain of the contrast medium according to the manner described hereinafter.  
15

Certain of the vesicles of the present invention, and especially vesicles formulated from lipids, may be visualized as flexible spherical domains of differing susceptibility from the suspending medium, including, for example, the aqueous suspension of the contrast medium or blood or other body fluids, for example, in the case of intravascular injection or injection into other body locations. In the case of  
20 ferrites or iron oxide particles, it should be noted that the contrast provided by these agents is dependent on particle size. This phenomenon is very common and is often referred to as the "secular" relaxation of the water molecules. Described in more physical terms, this relaxation mechanism is dependent upon the effective size of the molecular complex in which a paramagnetic atom, or paramagnetic molecule, or  
25 molecules, may reside. One physical explanation may be described in the following Solomon-Bloembergen equations which define the paramagnetic contributions as a function of the  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  relaxation times of a spin  $\frac{1}{2}$  nucleus with gyromagnetic ratio  $g$  perturbed by a paramagnetic ion:

$$\begin{aligned} 1/T_1M = & (2/15) S(S+1) \gamma^2 g^2 \beta^2 / r^6 [3\tau_c / (1 + \omega_i^2 \tau_c^2) + \\ 30 & 7\tau_c / (1 + \omega_i^2 \tau_c^2)] + (2/3) S(S+1) A^2 / h^2 [\tau_c / (1 + \omega_i^2 \tau_c^2)] \end{aligned}$$

and

$$1/T_2M = (1/15) S(S+1) \gamma^2 g^2 \beta^2 / r^6 [4\tau_c + 3\tau_c / (1 + \omega_i^2 \tau_c^2) +$$

- 135 -

$$13\tau_c/(1 + w_i^2\tau_c^2)] + (1/3) S(S+1)A^2/h^2 [\tau_e/(1 + \omega_e^2\tau_e^2)]$$

where  $S$  is the electron spin quantum number;  $g$  is the electronic  $g$  factor;  $\beta$  is the Bohr magneton;  $\omega_i$  and  $\omega_e$  ( $657 w_i$ ) is the Larmor angular precession frequencies for the nuclear spins and electron spins;  $r$  is the ion-nucleus distance;  $A$  is the hyperfine coupling constant;  $\tau_c$  and  $\tau_e$  are the correlation times for the dipolar and scalar interactions, respectively; and  $h$  is Planck's constant.

A few large particles may have a much greater effect than a larger number of much smaller particles, primarily due to a larger correlation time. If one were to make the iron oxide particles very large however, increased toxicity may result, and the lungs may be embolized or the complement cascade system may be activated. Furthermore, it is believed that the total size of the particle is not as important as the diameter of the particle at its edge or outer surface. The domain of magnetization or susceptibility effect falls off exponentially from the surface of the particle. Generally speaking, in the case of dipolar (through space) relaxation mechanisms, this exponential fall off exhibits an  $r^6$  dependence for a paramagnetic dipole-dipole interaction. Interpreted literally, a water molecule that is 4 angstroms away from a paramagnetic surface will be influenced 64 times less than a water molecule that is 2 angstroms away from the same paramagnetic surface. The ideal situation in terms of maximizing the contrast effect would be to make the iron oxide particles hollow, flexible and as large as possible. It has not been possible to achieve this heretofore and it is believed that the benefits have been unrecognized heretofore also. By coating the inner or outer surfaces of the vesicles with the contrast agents, even though the individual contrast agents, for example, iron oxide nanoparticles or paramagnetic ions, are relatively small structures, the effectiveness of the contrast agents may be greatly enhanced. In so doing, the contrast agents may function as an effectively much larger sphere wherein the effective domain of magnetization is determined by the diameter of the vesicle and is maximal at the surface of the vesicle. These agents afford the advantage of flexibility, namely, compliance. While rigid vesicles might lodge in the lungs or other organs and cause toxic reactions, these flexible vesicles slide through the capillaries much more easily.

In contrast to the flexible vesicles described above, it may be desirable, in certain circumstances, to formulate vesicles from substantially impermeable polymeric materials including, for example, polymethyl methacrylate. This would generally result in

the formation of vesicles which may be substantially impermeable and relatively inelastic and brittle. In embodiments involving diagnostic imaging, for example, ultrasound, contrast media which comprise such brittle vesicles would generally not provide the desirable reflectivity that the flexible vesicles may provide. However, by increasing the 5 power output on ultrasound, the brittle microspheres can be made to rupture, thereby causing acoustic emissions which can be detected by an ultrasound transducer.

Nuclear Medicine Imaging (NMI) may also be used in connection with the diagnostic and therapeutic method aspects of the present invention. For example, NMI may be used to detect radioactive gases, such as Xe<sup>133</sup>, which may be incorporated in the 10 present compositions in addition to, or instead of, the gases discussed above. Such radioactive gases may be entrapped within vesicles for use in detecting, for example, thrombosis. Preferably, bifunctional chelate derivatives are incorporated in the walls of vesicles, and the resulting vesicles may be employed in both NMI and ultrasound. In this case, high energy, high quality nuclear medicine imaging isotopes, such as technetium<sup>99m</sup> 15 or indium<sup>111</sup> can be incorporated in the walls of vesicles. Whole body gamma scanning cameras can then be employed to rapidly localize regions of vesicle uptake *in vivo*. If desired, ultrasound may also be used to confirm the presence, for example, of a clot within the blood vessels, since ultrasound generally provides improved resolution as compared to nuclear medicine techniques. NMI may also be used to screen the entire body of the 20 patient to detect areas of vascular thrombosis, and ultrasound can be applied to these areas locally to promote rupture of the vesicles and treat the clot.

For optical imaging, optically active gases, such as argon or neon, may be incorporated in the present compositions. In addition, optically active materials, for example, fluorescent materials, including porphyrin derivatives, may also be used. 25 Elastography is an imaging technique which generally employs much lower frequency sound, for example, about 60 kHz, as compared to ultrasound which can involve frequencies of over 1 MHz. In elastography, the sound energy or vibratory energy is generally applied to the tissue and the elasticity of the tissue may then be determined. In connection with preferred embodiments of the invention, which involve highly elastic 30 vesicles, the deposition of such vesicles onto, for example, a clot, increases the local elasticity of the tissue and/or the space surrounding the clot. This increased elasticity may

then be detected with elastography. If desired, elastography can be used in conjunction with other imaging techniques, such as MRI and ultrasound.

### Examples

The invention is further demonstrated in the following examples. Examples 1, 7, 9  
5 and 11 are actual examples; Example 10 is both actual (in part) and prophetic (in part);  
and Examples 2-6, 8 and 12 are prophetic examples. The examples are for purposes of  
illustration only and are not intended to limit the scope of the present invention.

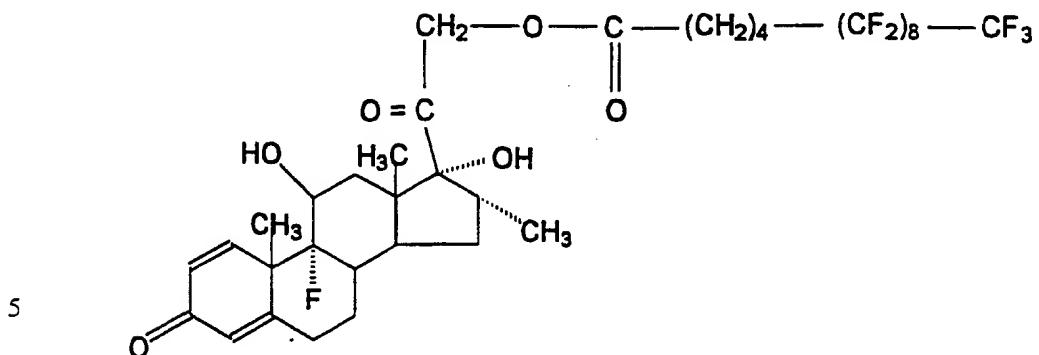
#### **Example 1**

Dexamethasone, dexamethasone-21-acetate and dexamethasone sodium phosphate  
10 individually were mixed into perfluorocarbons (e.g., perfluoropentane, perfluorohexane)  
and perfluoroethers (e.g., perfluoromethylbutyl ether). The mixtures were made at  
dexamethasone concentrations of 0.1 mg/ml, 0.5 mg/ml, 1.0 mg/ml, 1.5 mg/ml and 2.0  
mg/ml. Analysis indicated that no dissolution of dexamethasone, dexamethasone-21-  
acetate or dexamethasone sodium phosphate was seen in any of the perfluorocarbons or  
15 perfluoroethers at any concentration. In particular, optical microscopy showed that the  
dexamethasone samples formed irregular crystals which did not stabilize in the liquid  
perfluorocarbons or perfluoroethers, but precipitated out. Sonication decreased the size  
of the crystals, but even the small crystals, such as those smaller than 10  $\mu\text{m}$ , settled  
out.

#### **Example 2**

A partially fluorinated carboxylic acid, of the formula HOOC-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-(CF<sub>2</sub>)<sub>8</sub>-CF<sub>3</sub> was  
prepared by hydrolyzation and oxidation of PEG-Telomer B (DuPont Company), where  
PEG-Telomer B is, generally, a compound of the formula C<sub>n</sub>F<sub>2n+1</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>(OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>9</sub>-  
OH, where n is an integer of from about 6 to about 12. Thereafter, the compound of the  
25 formula HOOC-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-(CF<sub>2</sub>)<sub>8</sub>-CF<sub>3</sub> 0.7 g, dexamethasone 0.4 g, and N,N-  
dimethylaminopyridine 50 mg were dissolved in 30 ml chloroform, and added to a  
solution of dicyclohexylcarbodiimide 0.21 g in chloroform 10 ml while stirring at 0-5°C  
for 8 hours. 5 ml of 1% acetic acid was added and stirred for one hour, then the water  
layer was separated out, and washed with water again. The organic layer was dried over  
30 anhydrous sodium sulfate, and then the organic solvent was evaporated on a

rotaevaporator. The residue was redissolved in acetonitrile, the precipitate was filtered out, and the solution was evaporated on an evaporator to dryness. A white solid was obtained and was recrystallized from methanol, resulting in a fluorinated prodrug of dexamethasone of the formula:



### Example 3

A partially fluorinated carboxylic acid, of the formula

HOOC-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-(CF<sub>2</sub>)<sub>8</sub>-CF<sub>3</sub> was prepared by hydrolyzation and oxidation of PEG-Telomer

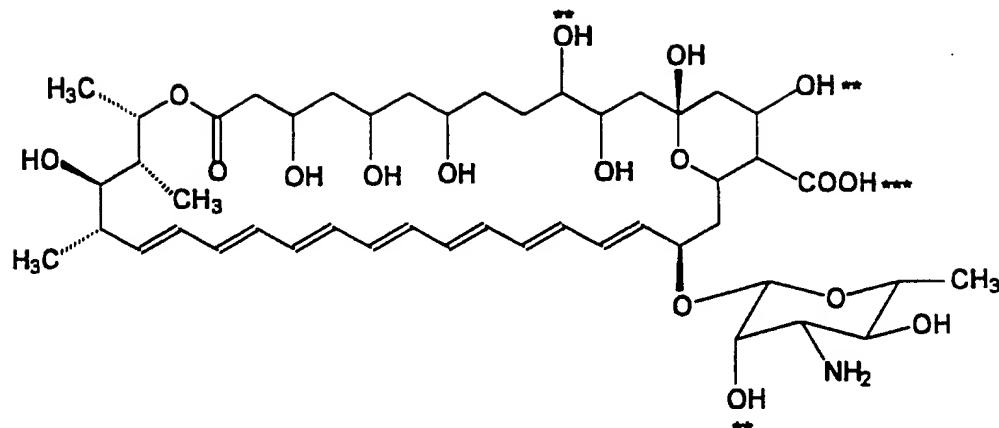
B (DuPont Company). Thereafter, the compound of the formula HOOC-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-(CF<sub>2</sub>)<sub>8</sub>-

10 CF<sub>3</sub>

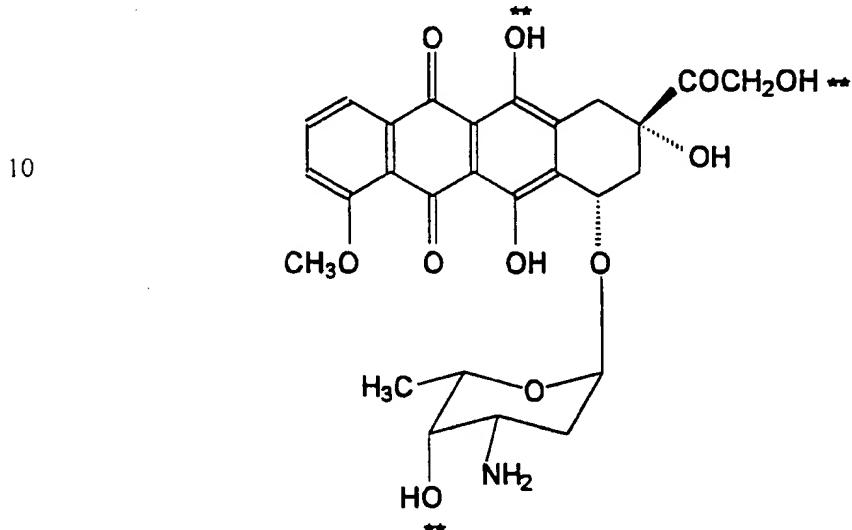
0.7 g, amphotericin B 0.92 g, and N,N-dimethylaminopyridine 50 mg were dissolved in 30 ml chloroform, and added to a solution of dicyclohexylcarbodiimide 0.21 g in chloroform 10 ml while stirring at room temperature for 8 hours. 5 ml of 1% acetic acid was added and stirred for one hour, then the water layer was separated out, and washed with water again. The organic layer was dried over anhydrous sodium sulfate, and then the organic solvent was evaporated on a rotaevaporator. The residue was redissolved in acetonitrile, the precipitate was filtered out, and the solution was evaporated on an evaporator to dryness. The residue is redissolved in a minimum of water then freeze dried on a lyophilizer. The product may be further purified through ethanol recrystallization.

15           In the resulting product, the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety (in this case, for example, HOOC-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-(CF<sub>2</sub>)<sub>8</sub>-CF<sub>3</sub>) is covalently bonded to the amphotericin B at either the anhydride (marked as \*\*\*\*) or at an ester (marked as \*\*). No linking group is required.

- 139 -

**Example 4**

The procedure in Example 3 is repeated except that 0.4 g of adriamycin (doxorubicin) is substituted for the amphotericin B. The linkage (\*\*) between the 5 fluorinated amphiphilic moiety and the adriamycin is made (i) as an ester linkage through a phenolic ring -OH of adriamycin using an oxidized carboxyl end on the PEG linker or (ii) as an ester linkage through an -OH of the sugar moiety of the drug.

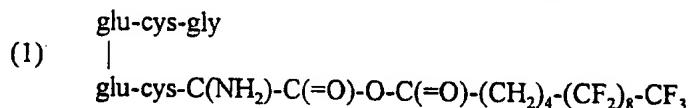


**Example 5**

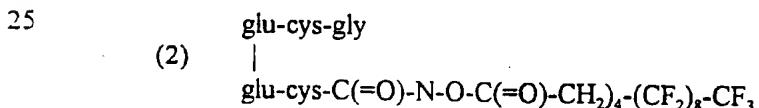
A solution of PEG-Telomer 4 mg and acetonitrile 10 ml was added dropwise to a cooled (5 to 10°C) stirred solution of tissue plasminogen activator (Sigma Chemical Co., St. Louis, MO) 20 mg in aqueous buffer 20 mL at a pH of 8.5. The temperature of the 5 resulting mixture was equilibrated to room temperature and the reaction mixture was stirred for about 48 hours. The mixture was concentrated *in vacuo* and the residual salts were dialyzed away using a dialysis bag having a molecular weight cutoff of about 3500, equilibrated against water. The resulting dialyzed solution was frozen and lyophilized to yield 12 mg of the title material as a white solid.

10 **Example 6**

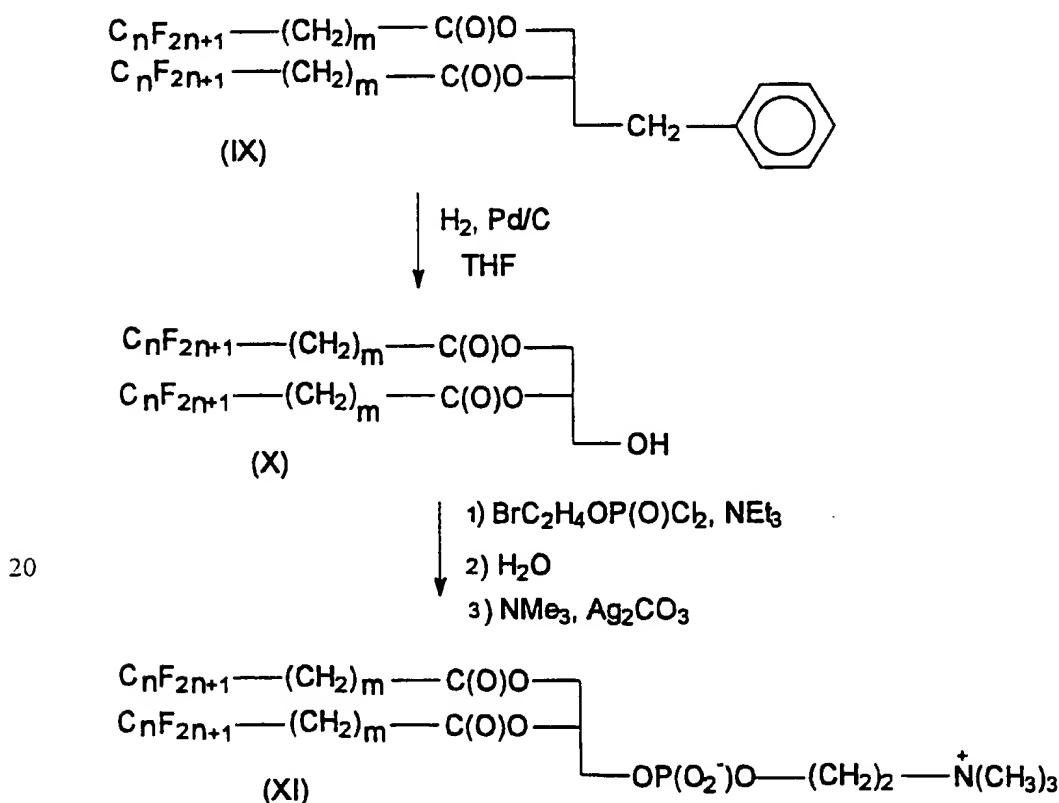
In general, small peptides such as glutathione can be derivatized to the prodrugs of the invention by variations in the method given in Example 2. For example, 15 mg of glutathione (glu-cys-gly) with a  $\gamma$ -glutamyl linkage, or the oxidized form with an interchain cysteinyl disulfide, is dissolved in 0.6 l of dimethyl sulfoxide plus 20 ml 15 pyridine and stirred. Separately 45 mg of PEG-Telomer B is dissolved 0.1 ml of dichloroethane. Triphosgene (0.2 ml of a 1.1 M solution in dichlorethane) is added with stirring for 30 minutes to the PEG-Telomer B solution. This mixture is then added to the glutathione solution and heated at 50°C for 16 hours. The conjugated prodrug can be precipitated with excess methylene chloride and dissolved in any of several organic 20 solvents. The resulting may can have an anhydride linkage (1) or a carbamyl linkage (2).



or

**Example 7**30 A. *Preparation of a fluorinated phospholipid moiety*

The fluorinated amphiphilic moiety of formula (II) can be prepared readily using standard organic synthetic methodology well known to one of ordinary skill in the art. Suitable methods for preparing fluorinated amphiphilic compounds are described, for example, by Santaella et al, *New Journal of Chemistry*, 15:685 (1991), the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference herein in its entirety. Exemplary of the available methods for preparing fluorinated amphiphilic compounds are synthetic methods based on the phosphorylation of 1,2-di-(F-alkylacyl)-3-glycerol derivatives. These methods can be utilized in the preparation of perfluoroalkyl phosphatidylcholines, and particularly perfluoroalkyl phosphatidylethanolamines, and are described, for example, by Santaella, *supra*. Such methods involve linear phosphorylating agents, including the Hirt and Berchtold reagent (2-bromoethyl dichlorophosphate (hereafter "BEDP")), which is readily available in large quantities. Hirt et al, *Pharm. Acta Helv.*, 33:349 (1958). BEDP is highly reactive and can be used to phosphorylate sterically hindered disubstituted glycerols. Hansen et al, *Lipids*, 17:453 (1982). The ammonium group can be introduced by reaction of an appropriate amine with the 1,2-diacylglycero-3-(2-bromoethyl)phosphate intermediate to give the desired phosphatidylethanolamine derivatives. This synthetic methodology is depicted in the following reaction scheme.



In the above compounds, m is 7 and n is 6. Generally, in compounds (IX), (X) and (XI) in the above reaction sequence, m can be an integer of from 0 to about 18 and n 5 can be an integer of from 1 to about 12.

The 1,2-disubstituted-3-benzylglycerol derivatives of formula (IX) are readily synthesized in high yields (85 to 90%) by acylation of 1-benzylglycerol with the corresponding perfluoroalkanoyl halides. *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 75:4074 (1978). The benzyl protecting group can be removed by hydrogenolysis over a palladium on 10 charcoal catalyst (Pd/C) in tetrahydrofuran (THF). *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 75:4074 (1978). Short reaction times for the hydrogenolysis of the benzyl group are preferred to avoid transesterification of the 1,2-diacylglycerol of formula (IX) into the more thermodynamically stable 1,3-diacylglycerol isomer. The hydrogenolysis reaction can be monitored by ordinary analytical techniques, including, for example, thin layer 15 chromatography (TLC) and proton (<sup>1</sup>H) nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR). The reaction is generally complete in about one hour with little or no transesterification. The hydrogenolysis reaction is preferably conducted in THF because the starting material (the compound of formula (IX)) and the product (the compound of formula (X)) are highly soluble in THF. THF is also used as the solvent in the subsequent 20 phosphorylation step.

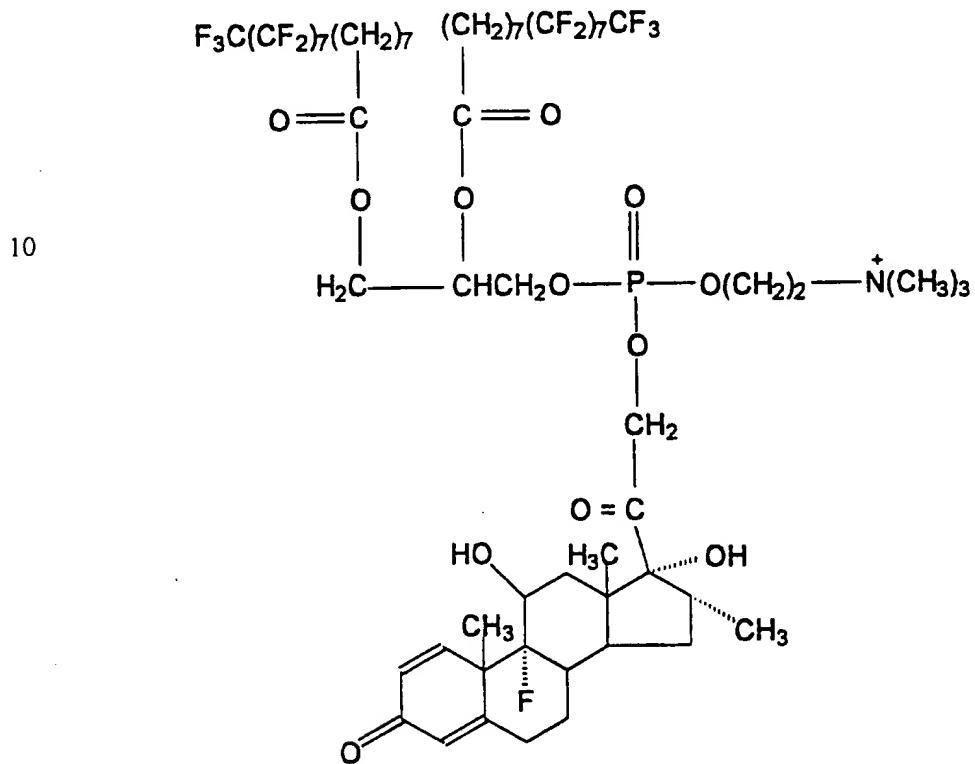
After hydrogenolysis, the catalyst (Pd/C) can be removed by filtration. The 1,2-diacylglycerols of formula (X) can be reacted immediately with BEDP and an excess of triethylamine. Phosphorylation is typically completed in about 2 to about 4 hours, as measured by TLC. The remaining phosphochloride bond can be hydrolysed in 25 aqueous base and generally requires about 22 hours for completion. When mineral bases or salts are used for hydrolysis including, for example, Na<sub>2</sub>CO<sub>3</sub>, KCl and EDTA sodium salt, the phosphate salts are highly insoluble in water or organic solvents. Fleischer, *Methods Enzymol.*, 98:263 (1983). The brominated intermediate can be isolated as a stable and soluble hydrogenotriethylammonium salt if excess triethylamine 30 is used. Acidification of the phosphate salts to form the corresponding acid is difficult because the glycerol ester bonds are hydrolyzed at the necessary pH (pH of 2 to 3). Product degradation occurs also during purification over silica gel. Accordingly, it is

- 143 -

preferred to use the phosphate salt without further purification. Nucleophilic displacement of the bromide ion by a large excess of trimethylamine occurs in a solvent mixture of CHCl<sub>3</sub>/CH<sub>3</sub>CN at 45C over a 12 hour period. The displaced bromide ion can be precipitated by the addition of silver carbonate.

5   *B. Conjugation with dexamethasone*

The procedure in Example 2 is repeated substituting compound (IX) or its phosphate salt for the fluorinated amphiphilic moiety. The resulting compound is a fluorinated phosphocholine-dexamethasone prodrug having the formula set forth below.



**Example 8**

15       A suspension of perfluoropentane was made by mixing it with the fluorinated amphiphilic prodrug described in Example 2. As an aside, similar suspensions may be made using a perfluorocarbon gas described herein and a surfactant as described herein. The mixture of fluorinated amphiphilic prodrug and fluorocarbon can be made in various ways that introduce energy into the system, including, for example, agitation on

a vortexer, shaking on a Wig-L-Bug amalgamator, extruding though an extruder device, emulsification with an Emulsi-flex device or with a Microfluidizer. In this example, the mixture was made using an extruder device. The mixture of perfluoropentane and fluorinated amphiphilic prodrug was then stirred into a 25% (w/v) solution of glucose in water. This material was tested and found to be acoustically active.

#### Example 9

A polyaspartate polymer containing fluorine was prepared by dissolving 1.5 g of poly-L-aspartate (85Kd species) in 40 ml formamide at 50°C, cooling to room temperature, and adding 10 mls of pyridine, 1.85 g of 1-hydroxybenzotriazole and 2.15 g of perfluro-t-butyl-propylamine hydrochloride. Excess pyridine was then removed by evaporation. Dicyclohexylcarbodiimde (2.82 g) was then added and the solution was incubated at room temperature with gentle stirring for 48 hrs. The byproduct N,N-dicyclohexylurea was removed by suction filtration, and the filtrate was poured into an equal volume dH<sub>2</sub>O and acidified with HCl to pH 3.0. The precipitated material was collected and redissolved in dH<sub>2</sub>O at pH 8.0. This solution can be optionally concentrated by reverse dialysis against solid high molecular weight polyethylene glycol or by lyophilization. The product is a fluorinated polyaspartate polymer wherein 40-50% of the hydrogen atoms are replaced by fluorine.

The fluorinated polyaspartate polymer from above can be mixed with the fluorinated amphiphile of Example 2 in a 5% (w/v) suspension of each preparation. The putative microspheres are deareated under a vacuum for two hours then subjected to sonic cavitation in the method described by Cerny, U.S. Patent No. 4,957,656, the disclosure of which is hereby incorporated by reference herein in its entirety. Perfluorobutane added to the headspace during the sonication step will produce acoustically active microspheres.

#### Example 10

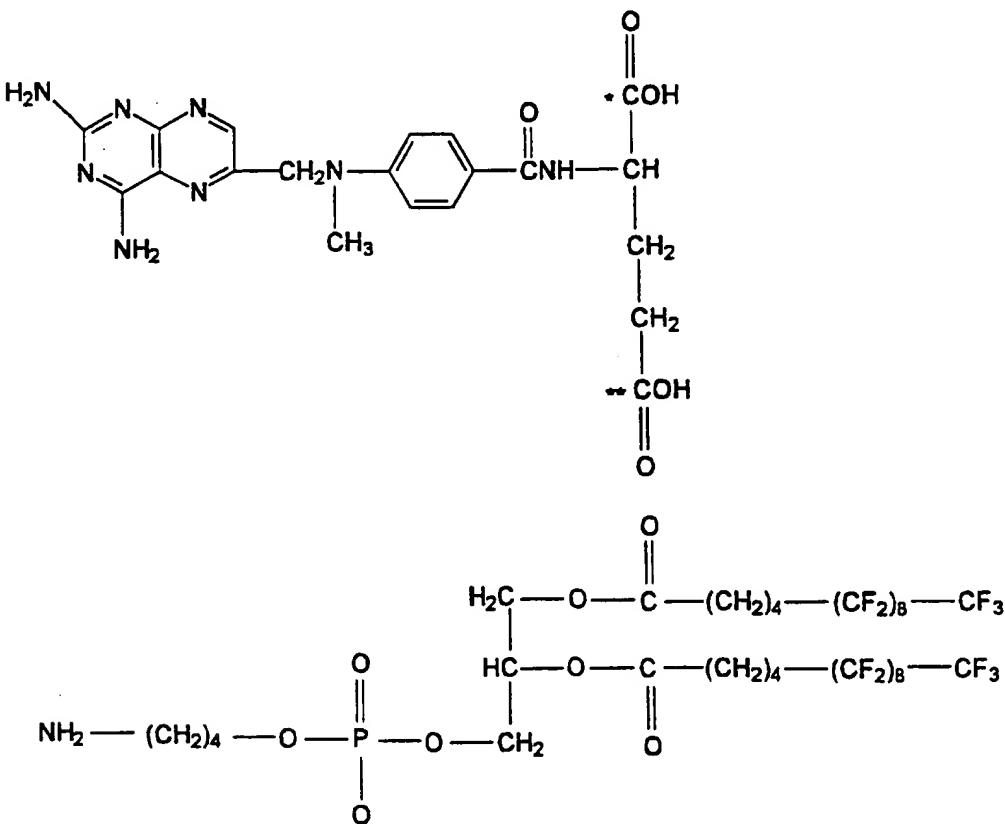
The methodology detailed below is a modification of the method of Hashimoto (*Biochim. Biophys. Acta.* (1985) 816:163-168), where the starting lipid, in this case glycerophosphorylethanol-amine, is replaced by the fluorinated compound synthesized in Example 8, with the fatty acyl chains being fluorinated derivatives of myristic acid.

- 145 -

Methotrexate (40 (mol) is dissolved in 0.8 ml of 1:1 chloroform/methanol (C/M). To this solution the following are added sequentially and stirred at room temperature for three hours: 120  $\mu$ mol of the fluorinated DMPE derivative in 5.6 ml C/M; 200  $\mu$ mol of N-hydroxysuccinimide in 0.8 ml C/M and 200  $\mu$ mol N,N-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide in 0.8 ml C/M. Following the incubation the solvent is removed in a rotary evaporator under reduced pressure at 40°C. The residue is redissolved in 2 ml C/M and purified on preparative silica gel TLC plates developed in chloroform/methanol/water, 65:30:5. Four yellow bands with  $R_f$  from 0.18 to 0.49 are scraped from the plate and reextracted in methanol plus 2 vols of chloroform. The extract is purified on a Unisil column (Clarkson 5 Chem. Co., Williamsport, PA) preequilibrated with methanol. The yellow fractions can be replated as before. The different bands represent different structural isomers with 10 different points of attachment of methotrexate to lipid.

The following illustration shows the positions where methotrexate is derivatized in the synthesis of the prodrug. \* is the  $\alpha$  position. \*\* is the  $\gamma$  position.

15

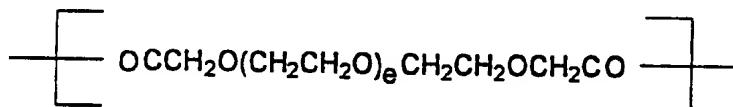


**Example 11**

This example is directed to the preparation of a fluorinated DPPE-PEG-peptide, where the peptide is -Lys-Gln-Ala-Gly-Asp-Val.

*A. Preparation of  $\omega, \omega'$ -dimethylenecarboxypolyethylene glycol anhydride.*

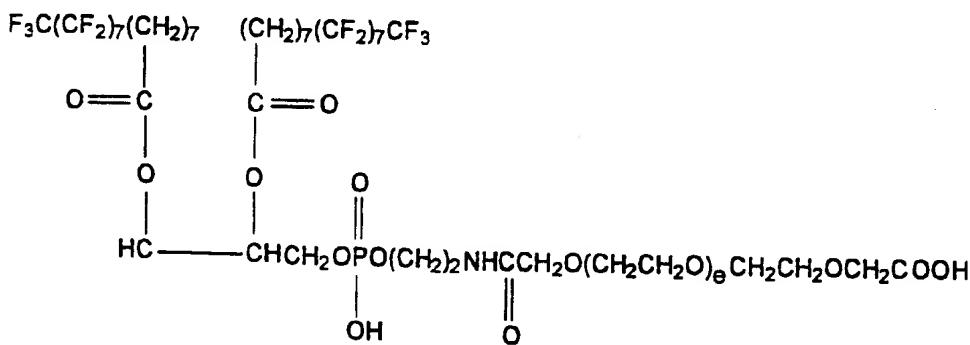
5 To a cooled (0 to 5C) solution of chlorosulfonyl isocyanate (14.2 mg) in CHCl<sub>3</sub> (5 mL) was added a solution of  $\omega, \omega'$ -dimethylenecarboxy-polyethylene glycol (0.34 g) and triethylamine (20 mg) in CHCl<sub>3</sub> (20 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred overnight and poured into ice water. The organic layer was isolated and dried (NaSO<sub>4</sub>). Filtration and concentration of the organic layer *in vacuo* yielded the following anhydride compound as a white solid (0.2 g).



where e is 8. Generally, e may be an integer of from about 1 to about 30.

*B. Preparation of 1,2-dipalmitoyl-sn-glycerol-3-phosphoethanolamine-N-carbonylmethylene- $\omega$ '-carboxy-polyethylene glycol (DPPE- $\omega$ -carboxy-PEG).*

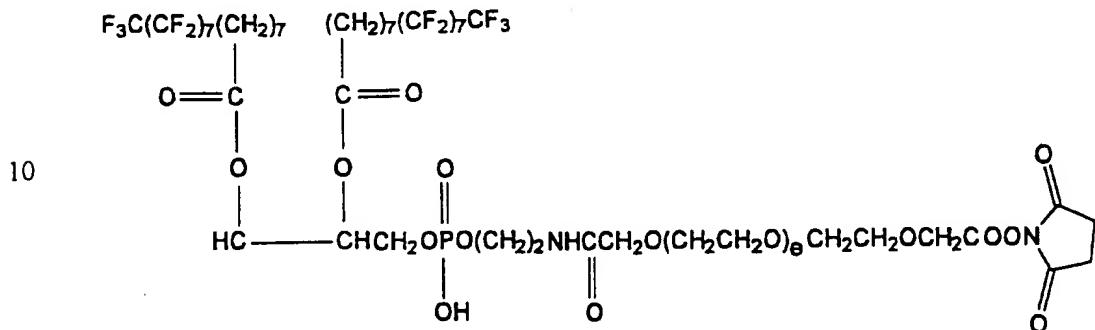
15 To a cooled (0 to 10C) solution of the anhydride compound from Step A (0.3 g) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (10 mL) was added a solution of fluorinated DPPE (0.07 g) and triethylamine (0.05 g) in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (15 mL). The resulting reaction mixture was stirred overnight, poured into ice water and neutralized with 10% HCl to a pH of less than 3. The organic layer was isolated and dried (NaSO<sub>4</sub>). Filtration and concentration of the 20 organic layer *in vacuo* provided 0.45 g of DPPE- $\omega$ -carboxy-PEG, of the following formula, as a dark white solid.



- 147 -

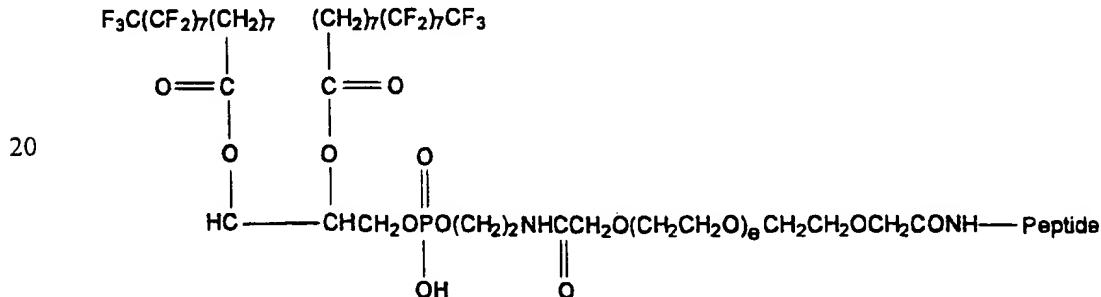
*C. Preparation of 1,2-dipalmitoyl-sn-glycerol-3-phosphoethanolamine-N-carbonylmethylene-polyethylene glycol-succinimide (DPPE- $\omega$ -carboxy-PEG-succinimide)*

To a cooled (0 to 5°C) solution of DCC (3 mg) in acetonitrile (2 mL) was added a solution of fluorinated DPPE- $\omega$ -carboxy-PEG from Step B (60 mg), 5 N-hydroxy-succinimide (1.8 mg) and dimethylaminopyridine (0.2 mg) in acetonitrile (6 mL). The resulting mixture was stirred for 3 hours at 0 to 5°C and then overnight at room temperature. The solid which formed was removed by filtration and the filtrate was concentrated *in vacuo* to provide 60 mg of fluorinated DPPE- $\omega$ -carboxy-PEG-succinimide of the formula:



*D. Preparation of fluorinated DPPE-PEG-Lys-Gln-Ala-Gly-Asp-Val conjugate*

To a cooled (0 to 5°C) solution of Lys-Gln-Ala-Gly-Asp-Val (5 mg) in a buffer solution at pH 8.5 was added dropwise fluorinated DPPE- $\omega$ -carboxy-PEG-succinimide (40 mg) in acetonitrile (10 mL). The resulting mixture was stirred at room temperature 15 for about 48 hours. The acetonitrile was removed *in vacuo*, and the mineral salt was dialyzed out through a membrane having a molecular weight cutoff of 1000. Lyophilization afforded 35 mg of the title compound (DPPE-PEG-Peptide, where the peptide is -Lys-Gln-Ala-Gly-Asp-Val) as a white solid.



**Example 12**

The glutathione-prodrug from Example 6 is administered to the lumen of the esophagus via an endoscope with concurrent application of a continuous wave ultrasound probe of 3 MHz at 1 watt/cm<sup>2</sup>, 100% duty cycle for 10 minutes, to target  
5 dysplasia in a patient exhibiting Barretts esophagus (esophageal reflux).

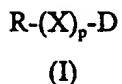
The disclosure of each patent, patent application and publication cited or described in this document is hereby incorporated by reference herein in their entirety.

Various modifications of the invention, in addition to those described herein, will be apparent to one skilled in the art from the foregoing description. Such modifications  
10 are also intended to fall within the scope of the appended claims.

Claims

What is claimed is:

1. A compound of the formula (I):



wherein:

R is a fluorinated amphiphilic moiety;

X is a linking group;

p is an integer of 0 or 1; and

D is a bioactive agent.

2. The compound of claim 1, wherein p is 1, and X is a linking group comprising an amide group, an ester group, an ether group, an anhydride group, a disulfide group, an SO<sub>2</sub>NH group, an amino group, a thio group or an alkyl group.

3. The compound of claim 2, wherein X is a linking group selected from the group consisting of -CONH-, -NCONH-, -C(=O)O-, -C(=O)OOC(=O)-, -S-S-, -O-, SO<sub>2</sub>NH, -NH-, -S-, and -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-, wherein n is an integer of from 1 to about 12.

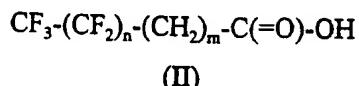
4. The compound of claim 1, wherein D is a bioactive agent selected from the group consisting of antineoplastic agents, blood products, biological response modifiers, anti-fungal agents, hormones, steroids, vitamins, peptides, peptide analogs, enzymes, anti-allergenic agents, anti-coagulation agents, circulatory agents, anti-tubercular agents, anti-viral agents, anti-anginal agents, antibiotics, anti-inflammatory agents, analgesics, anti-protozoan agents, anti-rheumatic agents, narcotics, cardiac glycoside agents, chelates, neuromuscular blocking agents, sedatives, local anesthetic agents, general anesthetic agents, radioactive particles, radioactive ions, X-ray contrast agents, monoclonal antibodies and genetic materials.

- 150 -

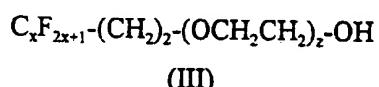
5. The compound of claim 4, wherein D is a bioactive agent selected from the group consisting of antineoplastic agents, anti-fungal agents, hormones, steroids, peptides and peptide analogs.

6. The compound of claim 5, wherein the bioactive agent is selected from the group consisting of dexamethasone, amphotericin B, adriamycin, mitomycin c, taxol and tissue plasminogen activator.

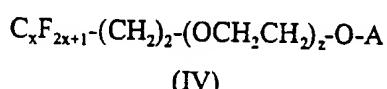
7. The compound of claim 1, wherein R is selected from the group consisting of a moiety of the formula (II), a moiety of the formula (III), a moiety of the formula (IV), a moiety of the formula (V) and a moiety of the formula (VI):



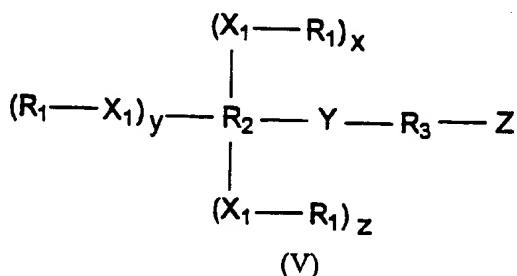
wherein n is an integer of from about 7 to about 13, m is an integer of from about 1 to about 4;



wherein x is an integer of from about 6 to about 12, and z is an integer of from about 8 to about 20;



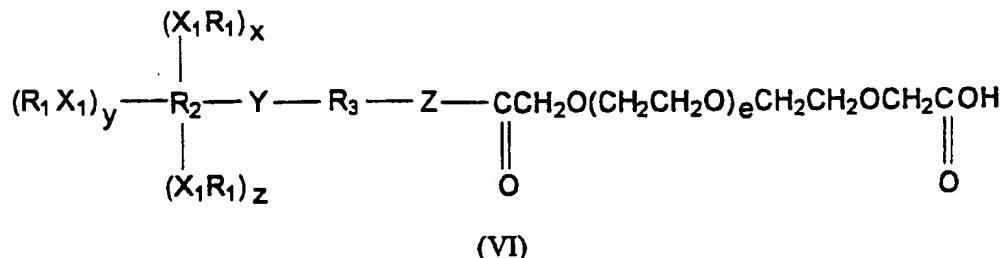
wherein x is an integer of about 6 to about 12, z is an integer of about 8 to about 20, and A is selected from the group consisting of monosaccharides and disaccharides;



wherein each of x, y and z is independently 0 or 1; each X<sub>1</sub> is independently -O-, -S-, -SO-, -SO<sub>2</sub>-, -NR<sub>4</sub>-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-O-, -O-C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-NR<sub>4</sub>- or -NR<sub>4</sub>-C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-; X<sub>2</sub> is O or S; Y is a direct bond or -X<sub>3</sub>-M(=O)(OR<sub>5</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-, where q is 1 or 2; X<sub>3</sub> is a direct bond

- 151 -

or -O-; M is P or S; Z is hydrogen atom, the residue of a hydrophilic polymer, a saccharide residue or -N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>r</sub>, where r is 2 or 3; each R<sub>i</sub> is independently an alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms or a fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbons; R<sub>2</sub> is a direct bond or an alkylene linking group of 1 to about 10 carbon atoms; R<sub>3</sub> is a direct bond or an alkylene diradical of 1 to about 10 carbon atoms; each of R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> is independently a hydrogen atom or an alkyl group of 1 to about 8 carbons; and each R<sub>6</sub> is independently a hydrogen atom, an alkyl group of 1 to about 8 carbon atoms or a residue of a hydrophilic polymer; provided that at least one of x, y and z is 1, at least one of R<sub>i</sub> is a fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms; provided that when R<sub>2</sub> is a direct bond, two of x, y and z are each 0; and

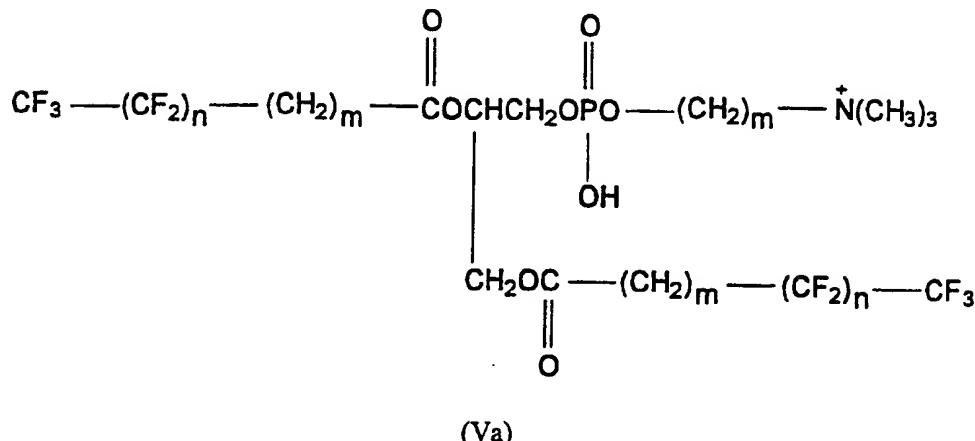


wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, X<sub>1</sub>, Y, Z, x, y and z are as defined above in formula (V) and where e is an integer of from 1 to about 30.

8. The compound of claim 7, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (II).
9. The compound of claim 7, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (III).
10. The compound of claim 7, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (IV).
11. The compound of claim 7, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (V).

- 152 -

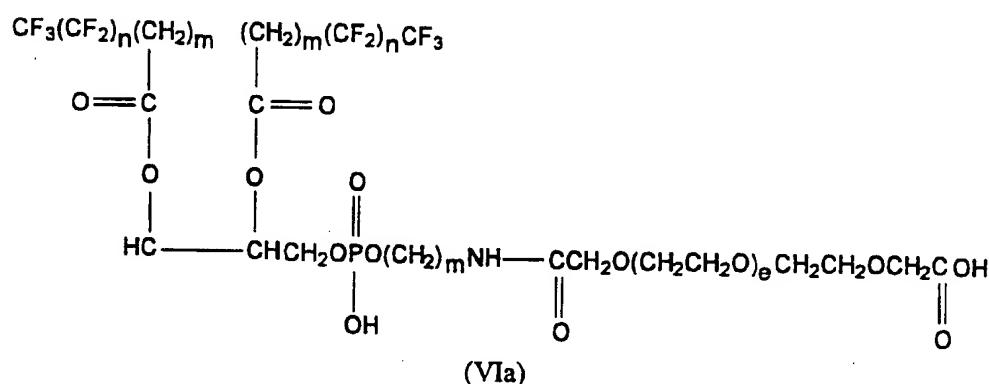
12. The compound of claim 11, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (Va):



wherein n is an integer of from about 7 to about 13; m is an integer of from about 1 to about 4.

13. The compound of claim 7, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (VI).

14. The compound of claim 13, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (VIa):



wherein n is an integer of from about 7 to about 13; m is an integer of 1 to about 4; e is an integer of from 1 to about 30.

15. A composition comprising, in an aqueous carrier, a compound of the formula (I):



(I)

wherein: R is a fluorinated amphiphilic moiety;  
X is a linking group;  
p is an integer of 0 or 1; and  
D is a bioactive agent.

16. The composition of claim 15, wherein, in formula (I), p is 1, and X is a linking group comprising an amide group, an ester group, an ether group, an anhydride group, a disulfide group, an SO<sub>2</sub>NH group, an amino group, a thio group or an alkyl group.

17. The composition of claim 16, wherein X is a linking group selected from the group consisting of -CONH-, -NCONH-, -C(=O)O-, -C(=)OOC(=O)-, -S-S-, -O-, SO<sub>2</sub>NH, -NH-, -S-, and -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-, wherein n is an integer of from 1 to about 12.

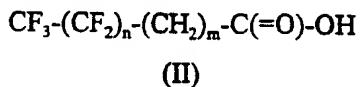
18. The composition of claim 15, wherein D in formula (I) is a bioactive agent selected from the group consisting of antineoplastic agents, blood products, biological response modifiers, anti-fungal agents, hormones, steroids, vitamins, peptides, peptide analogs, enzymes, anti-allergenic agents, anti-coagulation agents, circulatory agents, anti-tubercular agents, anti-viral agents, anti-anginal agents, antibiotics, anti-inflammatory agents, analgesics, antiprotozoan agents, anti-rheumatic agents, narcotics, cardiac glycoside agents, chelates, neuromuscular blocking agents, sedatives, local anesthetic agents, general anesthetic agents, radioactive particles, radioactive ions, X-ray contrast agents, monoclonal antibodies and genetic material.

19. The composition of claim 18, wherein D is a bioactive agent selected from the group consisting of antineoplastic agents, anti-fungal agents, hormones, steroids, peptides and peptide analogs.

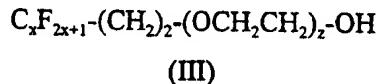
- 154 -

20. The composition of claim 19, wherein the bioactive agent is selected from the group consisting of dexamethasone, amphotericin B, adriamycin, mitomycin C, taxol and tissue plasminogen activator.

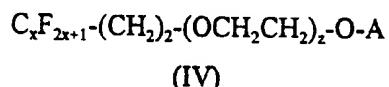
21. The composition of claim 15, wherein R is selected from the group consisting of a moiety of the formula (II), a moiety of the formula (III), a moiety of the formula (IV), a moiety of the formula (V) and a moiety of the formula (VI):



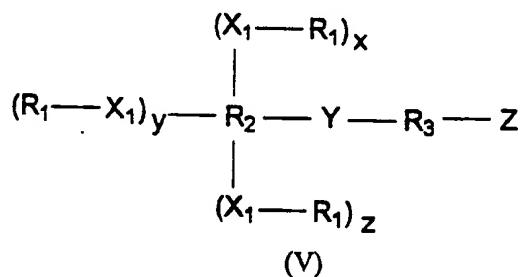
wherein n is an integer of from about 7 to about 13, m is an integer of from about 1 to about 4;



wherein x is an integer of from about 6 to about 12, and z is an integer of from about 8 to about 20;



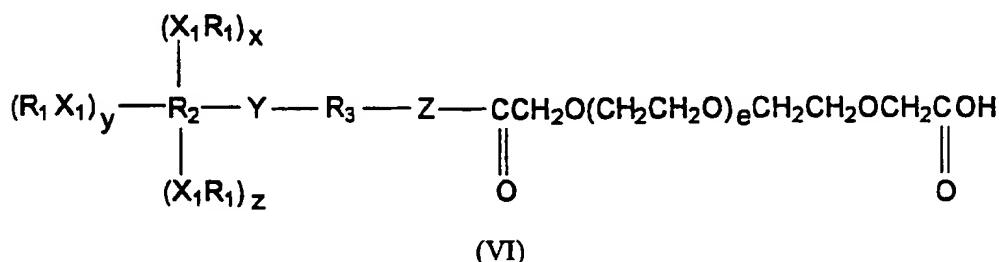
wherein x is an integer of about 6 to about 12, z is an integer of about 8 to about 20, and A is selected from the group consisting of monosaccharides and disaccharides; and



wherein each of x, y and z is independently 0 or 1; each X<sub>1</sub> is independently -O-, -S-, -SO-, -SO<sub>2</sub>-, -NR<sub>4</sub>-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-O-, -O-C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-NR<sub>4</sub>- or -NR<sub>4</sub>-C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-; X<sub>2</sub> is O or S; Y is a direct bond or -X<sub>3</sub>-M(=O)(OR<sub>5</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-, where q is 1 or 2; X<sub>3</sub> is a direct bond or -O-; M is P or S; Z is hydrogen atom, the residue of a hydrophilic polymer, a saccharide residue or -N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>r</sub>, where r is 2 or 3; each R<sub>1</sub> is independently an alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms or a fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbons; R<sub>2</sub> is a direct bond or an alkylene linking group of 1 to about 10 carbon atoms; R<sub>3</sub> is a direct bond

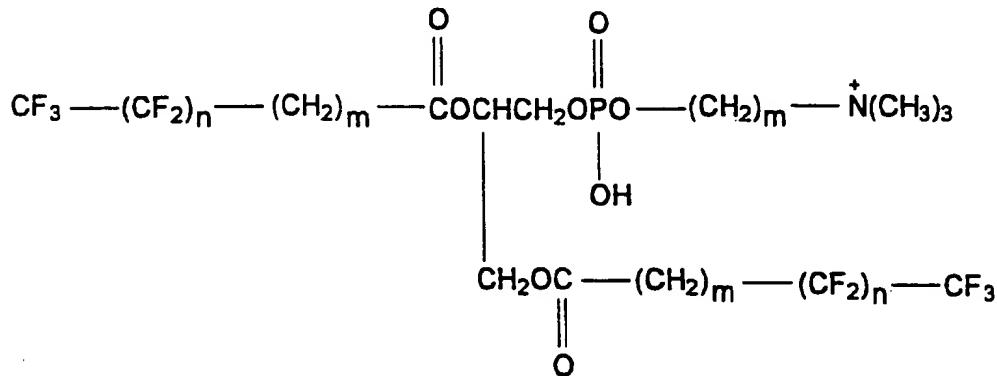
- 155 -

or an alkylene diradical of 1 to about 10 carbon atoms; each of R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> is independently a hydrogen atom or an alkyl group of 1 to about 8 carbons; and each R<sub>6</sub> is independently a hydrogen atom, an alkyl group of 1 to about 8 carbon atoms or a residue of a hydrophilic polymer; provided that at least one of x, y and z is 1, at least one of R<sub>1</sub> is a fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms; provided that when R<sub>2</sub> is a direct bond, two of x, y and z are each 0; and



wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, X<sub>1</sub>, Y, Z, x, y and z are as defined above in formula (V) and where e is an integer of from 1 to about 30.

22. The composition of claim 21, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (II).
23. The composition of claim 21, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (III).
24. The composition of claim 21, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (IV).
25. The composition of claim 21, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (V).
26. The composition of claim 25, where R is a moiety of the formula (Va):



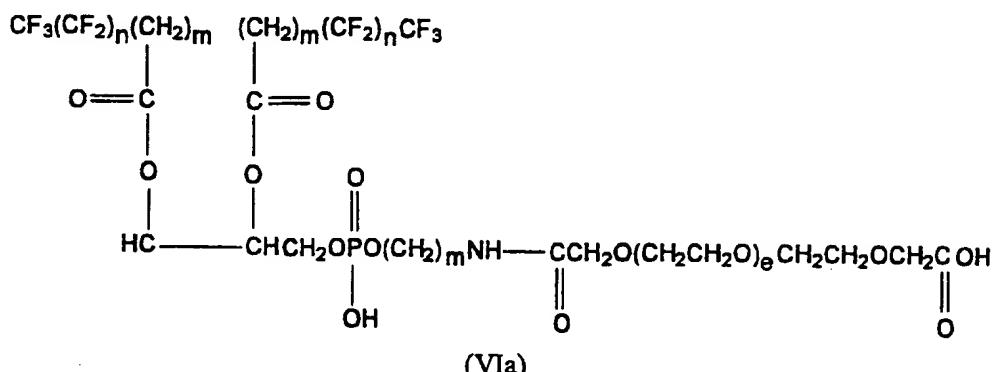
- 156 -

(Va)

wherein n is an integer of from about 7 to about 13; m is an integer of from 1 to about 4.

27. The composition of claim 21, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (VI).

28. The composition of claim 27, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (VIa):



wherein n is an integer of from about 7 to about 13; m is an integer of 1 to about 4; e is an integer of from 1 to about 30

29. The composition of claim 15, wherein said fluorinated amphiphilic moiety forms a vesicle.

30. The composition of claim 15, wherein said fluorinated amphiphilic moiety is non-vesicular

31. The composition of claim 15, further comprising a gas, a gaseous precursor or a gas and a gaseous precursor.

32. The composition of claim 15, further comprising a fluorinated liquid

33. The composition of claim 32, wherein said fluorinated liquid is selected from the group consisting of perfluorohexane, perfluoroheptane, perfluorooctane.

- 157 -

perfluororononane, perfluoroctylbromide, perfluoroctyliodide, perfluorotripropylamine, perfluorotributylamine, perfluorodecalin and perfluorododecalin.

34. The composition of claim 15, further comprising an oil.
35. The composition of claim 34, wherein the oil is a fluorinated oil.
36. The composition of claim 15, further comprising a stabilizing material.
37. The composition of claim 36, wherein said stabilizing material comprises a lipid, a protein or a polymer.
38. The composition of claim 37, wherein said stabilizing material comprises a lipid.
39. The composition of claim 36, wherein said stabilizing material comprises a surfactant.
40. The composition of claim 39, wherein said surfactant is a fluorinated surfactant.
41. The composition of claim 36, wherein said stabilizing material is in the form of a vesicle.
42. The composition of claim 36, wherein said stabilizing material is non-vesicular.
43. The composition of claim 15, further comprising a targeting ligand.
44. The composition of claim 15, further comprising a targeting ligand and a gas, a gaseous precursor or a gas and a gaseous precursor.

- 158 -

45. The composition of claim 31 or 44, wherein the gas or gaseous precursor is selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur hexafluoride, a perfluorocarbon and a perfluoroether.

46. The composition of claim 45, wherein the perfluorocarbon is selected from the group consisting of perfluoromethane, perfluoroethane, perfluoropropane, perfluorobutane, perfluoropentane, perfluorocyclobutane, and perfluorocyclopropane.

47. The composition of claim 45, wherein the perfluoroether is selected from the group consisting of perfluorobutylmethylether, perfluoromethylpentylether, perfluorotetrahydropyran and perfluoromethyltetrahydrofuran.

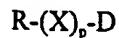
48. The composition of claim 43 or 44, wherein the targeting ligand is selected from the group consisting of proteins, peptides and saccharides.

49. The composition of claim 43 or 44, wherein the targeting ligand is selected from the group consisting of cytokines, integrins, cadherins, immunoglobulins and selectins.

50. The composition of claim 43 or 44, wherein the targeting ligand targets lymphocytes.

51. The composition of claim 43 or 44, wherein the targeting ligand targets T-cells, B-cells or Interleukin-2 receptors.

52. A method of delivering a bioactive agent to a patient comprising administering to the patient a composition comprising, in an aqueous carrier, a compound of the formula (I):



wherein:

R is a fluorinated amphiphilic moiety;

X is a linking group;

- 159 -

p is an integer of 0 or 1; and

D is a bioactive agent.

53. The method of claim 52, further comprising imaging the patient with diagnostic ultrasound to monitor the location of the composition.

54. The method of claim 53, further comprising applying therapeutic ultrasound to the patient to facilitate delivery of said bioactive agent in a desired region of the patient.

55. The method of claim 52, wherein said fluorinated amphiphilic moiety forms a vesicle.

56. The method of claim 52, wherein said fluorinated amphiphilic moiety is non-vesicular.

57. The method of claim 52, wherein said composition further comprises a gas, a gaseous precursor or a gas and a gaseous precursor.

58. The method of claim 52, wherein said composition further comprises a fluorinated liquid.

59. The method of claim 58, wherein said fluorinated liquid is selected from the group consisting of perfluorohexane, perfluoroheptane, perfluoroctane, perfluorononane, perfluoroctylbromide, perfluoroctyl iodide, perfluorotripropylamine, perfluorotributylamine, perfluorodecalin and perfluorododecalin.

60. The method of claim 52, wherein said composition further comprises an oil.

61. The method of claim 60, wherein the oil is a fluorinated oil.

62. The method of claim 52, wherein said composition further comprises a stabilizing material.

- 160 -

63. The method of claim 62, wherein said stabilizing material comprises a lipid, a protein or a polymer.
64. The method of claim 63, wherein said stabilizing material comprises a lipid.
65. The method of claim 62, wherein said stabilizing material comprises a surfactant.
66. The method of claim 65, wherein said surfactant is a fluorinated surfactant.
67. The method of claim 62, wherein said stabilizing material is in the form of a vesicle.
68. The method of claim 62, wherein said stabilizing material is non-vesicular.
69. The method of claim 52, wherein said composition further comprises a targeting ligand.
70. The method of claim 52, wherein said composition further comprises a targeting ligand and a gas, a gaseous precursor or a gas and a gaseous precursor.
71. The method of claim 57 or 70, wherein the gas or gaseous precursor is selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, sulfur hexafluoride, a perfluorocarbon and a perfluoroether.
72. The method of claim 71, wherein the perfluorocarbon is selected from the group consisting of perfluoromethane, perfluoroethane, perfluoropropane, perfluorobutane, perfluoropentane, perfluorocyclobutane and perfluorocyclopropane.
73. The method of claim 71, wherein the perfluoroether is selected from the group consisting of perfluorobutylmethylether, perfluoromethylpentylether, perfluorotetrahydropyran and perfluoromethyltetrahydrofuran.

- 161 -

74. The method of claim 69 or 70, wherein the targeting ligand is selected from the group consisting of proteins, peptides and saccharides.

75. The method of claim 69 or 70, wherein the targeting ligand is selected from the group consisting of cytokines, integrins, cadherins, immunoglobulins and selectins.

76. The method of claim 69 or 70, wherein the targeting ligand targets lymphocytes.

77. The method of claim 69 or 70, wherein the targeting ligand targets T-cells, B-cells or Interleukin-2 receptors.

78. The method of claim 52, wherein, in formula (I), p is 1, and X is a linking group comprising an amide group, an ester group, an ether group, an anhydride group, a disulfide group, an SO<sub>2</sub>NH group, an amino group, a thio group or an alkyl group.

79. The method of claim 78, wherein X is a linking group selected from the group consisting of -CONH-, -NCONH-, -C(=O)O-, -C(=)OOC(=O)-, -S-S-, -O- SO<sub>2</sub>NH, -NH-, -S-, and -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>n</sub>-, wherein n is an integer of from 1 to about 12.

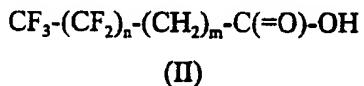
80. The method of claim 52, wherein D in the formula (I) is a bioactive agent selected from the group consisting of antineoplastic agents, blood products, biological response modifiers, anti-fungal agents, hormones, steroids, vitamins, peptides, peptide analogs, enzymes, anti-allergenic agents, anti-coagulation agents, circulatory agents, anti-tubercular agents, anti-viral agents, anti-anginal agents, antibiotics, anti-inflammatory agents, analgesics, antiprotozoan agents, anti-rheumatic agents, narcotics, cardiac glycoside agents, chelates, neuromuscular blocking agents, sedatives, local anesthetic agents, general anesthetic agents, radioactive particles, radioactive ions, X-ray contrast agents, monoclonal antibodies and genetic material.

81. The method of claim 80, wherein D is a bioactive agent selected from the group consisting of antineoplastic agents, anti-fungal agents, hormones, steroids, peptides and peptide analogs.

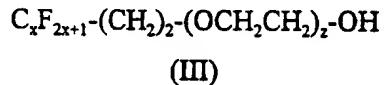
- 162 -

82. The method of claim 81, wherein the bioactive agent is selected from the group consisting of dexamethasone, amphotericin B, adriamycin, mitomycin c, taxol and tissue plasminogen activator.

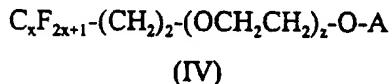
83. The method of claim 52, wherein R in the formula (I) is selected from the group consisting of a moiety of the formula (II), a moiety of the formula (III), a moiety of the formula (IV), a moiety of the formula (V) and a moiety of the formula (VI):



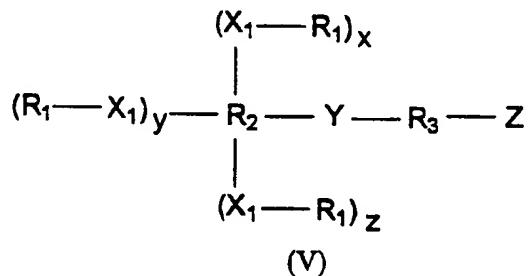
wherein n is an integer of from about 7 to about 13, m is an integer of from about 1 to about 4;



wherein x is an integer of from about 6 to about 12, and z is an integer of from about 8 to about 20;



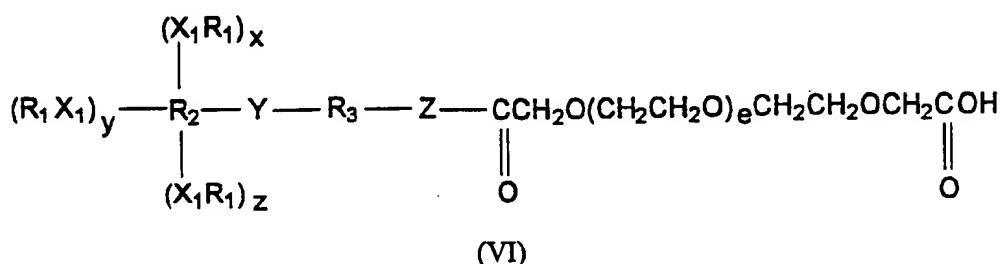
wherein x is an integer of about 6 to about 12, z is an integer of about 8 to about 20, and A is selected from the group consisting of monosaccharides and disaccharides;



wherein each of x, y and z is independently 0 or 1; each X<sub>1</sub> is independently -O-, -S-, -SO-, -SO<sub>2</sub>-, -NR<sub>4</sub>-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-O-, -O-C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-, -C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-NR<sub>4</sub>- or -NR<sub>4</sub>-C(=X<sub>2</sub>)-; X<sub>2</sub> is O or S; Y is a direct bond or -X<sub>3</sub>-M(=O)(OR<sub>5</sub>)<sub>q</sub>-O-, where q is 1 or 2; X<sub>3</sub> is a direct bond or -O-; M is P or S; Z is hydrogen atom, the residue of a hydrophilic polymer, a saccharide residue or -N(R<sub>6</sub>)<sub>r</sub>, where r is 2 or 3; each R<sub>i</sub> is independently an alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms or a fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbons; R<sub>2</sub> is a direct bond or an alkylene linking group of 1 to about 10 carbon atoms; R<sub>3</sub> is a direct bond

- 163 -

or an alkylene diradical of 1 to about 10 carbon atoms; each of R<sub>4</sub> and R<sub>5</sub> is independently a hydrogen atom or an alkyl group of 1 to about 8 carbons; and each R<sub>6</sub> is independently a hydrogen atom, an alkyl group of 1 to about 8 carbon atoms or a residue of a hydrophilic polymer; provided that at least one of x, y and z is 1, at least one of R<sub>1</sub> is a fluorinated alkyl group of 1 to about 30 carbon atoms; provided that when R<sub>2</sub> is a direct bond, two of x, y and z are each 0; and



wherein R<sub>1</sub>, R<sub>2</sub>, R<sub>3</sub>, X<sub>1</sub>, Y, Z, x, y and z are as defined above in formula (V) and wherein e is an integer of from 1 to about 30.

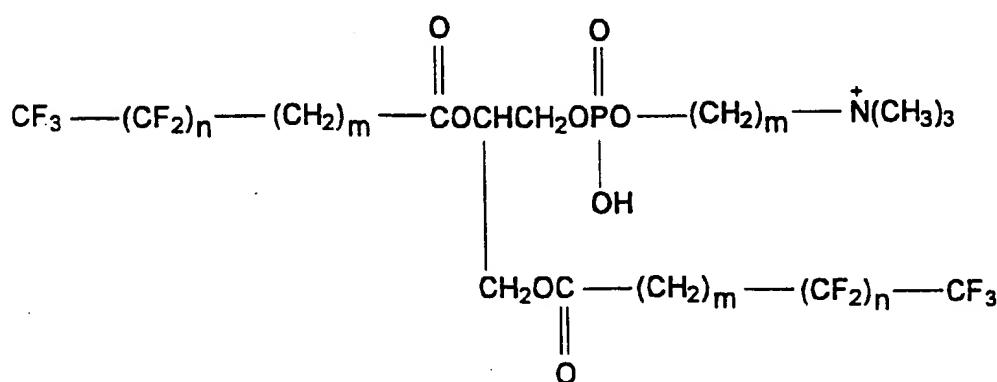
84. The method of claim 83, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (II).

85. The method of claim 83, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (III).

86. The method of claim 83, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (IV).

87. The method of claim 83, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (V).

88. The method of claim 87, where R is a moiety of the formula (Va):

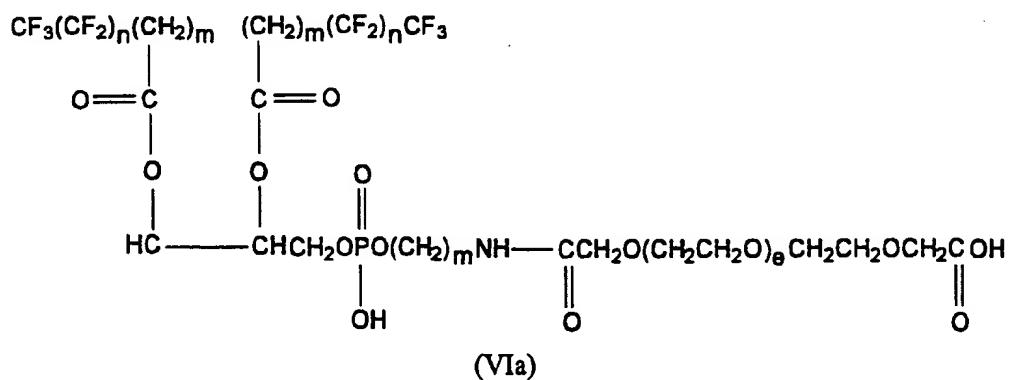


(Va)

wherein n is an integer of from about 7 to about 13; and m is an integer of from 1 to about 4.

89. The method of claim 83, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (VI).

90 The method of claim 89, wherein R is a moiety of the formula (VIa):



wherein n is an integer of from about 7 to about 13; m is an integer of 1 to about 4; e is an integer of from 1 to about 30.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US98/07712

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC(6) A61K 31/56; C07J 5/00, 7/00

US CL : 514/178, 180, 181; 552/569, 574

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

U.S. : 514/178, 180, 181; 552/569, 574

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practicable, search terms used)

STN Express, APS

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

| Category* | Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages | Relevant to claim No.        |
|-----------|--|------------------------------|
| A         | US 4,693,999 A (AXELSSON et al.) 15 September 1987, see the entire document.       | 1-8, 15, 21-22,<br>52, 83-84 |
| A         | US 5,015,746 A (MIZUSHIMA et al.) 14 May 1991, see the entire document.            | 1-8, 15, 21-22,<br>52, 83-84 |

Further documents are listed in the continuation of Box C.  See patent family annex.

|   |     |  |
|---|-----|--|
| * Special categories of cited documents:  | "T" | later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention  |
| "A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance  |     |  |
| "B" earlier document published on or after the international filing date  | "X" | document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone   |
| "L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified) | "Y" | document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art |
| "O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means  | "A" | document member of the same patent family  |
| "P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed  |     |  |

Date of the actual completion of the international search

27 JULY 1998

Date of mailing of the international search report

24 AUG 1998

Name and mailing address of the ISA/US  
Commissioner of Patents and Trademarks  
Box PCT

Washington, D.C. 20231

Facsimile No. (703) 305-3230

Authorized officer

BARBARA BADIO

Telephone No. (703) 308-1235

**INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT**International application No.  
PCT/US98/07712**BOX II. OBSERVATIONS WHERE UNITY OF INVENTION WAS LACKING**

This ISA found multiple inventions as follows:

This application contains the following inventions or groups of inventions which are not so linked as to form a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1. In order for all inventions to be searched, the appropriate additional search fees must be paid.

Group I, claim(s) 1-8, 15, 21-22, 52 and 83-84 (wherein R is a moiety of formula II), drawn to a compound, composition and method of use.

Group II, claim(s) 1-7, 9, 15, 21, 23, 52, 83 and 85 (wherein R is a moiety of formula III), drawn to a compound, composition and method of use.

Group III, claim(s) 1-7, 10, 15, 21, 24, 52, 83 and 86 (wherein R is a moiety of formula IV, drawn to a compound, composition and method of use).

Group IV, claim(s) 1-7, 11-12, 15, 21, 25-26, 52, 83 and 87-88 (wherein R is a moiety of formula V), drawn to a compound, composition and method of use.

Group V, claim(s) 1-7, 13-15, 21, 27-28, 52, 83 and 89-90 (wherein R is a moiety of formula VI), drawn to a compound, composition and method of use.

Group VI, claim(s) 15-20, 29 and 30, drawn to a composition.

Group VII, claim(s) 31 and 45-47, drawn to a composition further comprising a gas, a gaseous precursor or a gas and a gaseous precursor.

Group VIII, claim(s) 32-33, drawn to a composition further comprising a fluorinated liquid.

Group IX, claim(s) 34-35, drawn to a composition further comprising an oil.

Group X, claim(s) 36-42, drawn to a composition further comprising a stabilizing material.

Group XI, claim(s) 43-51, drawn to a composition further comprising a targeting ligand.

Group XII, claim(s) 52, 55-56 and 78-82, drawn to a method of use.

Group XIII, claim(s) 53-54, drawn to a method of use further comprising the use of ultrasound.

Group XIV, claim(s) 57 and 71-73, drawn to a method of use wherein the composition further comprises a gas, a gaseous precursor or a gas and a gaseous precursor.

Group XV, claim(s) 58-59, drawn to a method of use wherein the composition further comprises a fluorinated liquid.

Group XVI, claim(s) 60-61, drawn to a method of use wherein the composition further comprises an oil.

Group XVII, claim(s) 62-68, drawn to a method of use wherein the composition further comprises a stabilizing material.

Group XVIII, claim(s) 69-77, drawn to a method of use wherein the composition further comprises a targeting ligand.

Note: Formulae V and VI will be examined to the extent that they read on formulae Va and VIa, respectively.

This application contains claims directed to more than one species of the generic invention. These species are deemed to lack Unity of Invention because they are not so linked as to form a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1. In order for more than one species to be searched, the appropriate additional search fees must be paid. The species are of a wide variety of chemical classes of compounds which makes up the various groups of bioactive agent recited in the instant claims (see for example claim 4).

The inventions and species listed as Groups I-XVIII do not relate to a single inventive concept under PCT Rule 13.1

**INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT**

International application No.

PCT/US98/07712

because, under PCT Rule 13.2, they lack the same or corresponding special technical features for the following reasons: The claimed inventions do not share a significant structural element which qualifies as the special technical feature. The bioactive agents listed contain compounds having various and/or different chemical groups and, thus, do not share a significant structural element which qualifies as the special technical feature. The various chemical groups do not have similar properties therefore, the compounds would not similar properties. Accordingly, unity of invention is lacking and restriction of the inventions and species in accordance with the rules of unity of invention is proper.

**THIS PAGE BLANK (USPTO)**